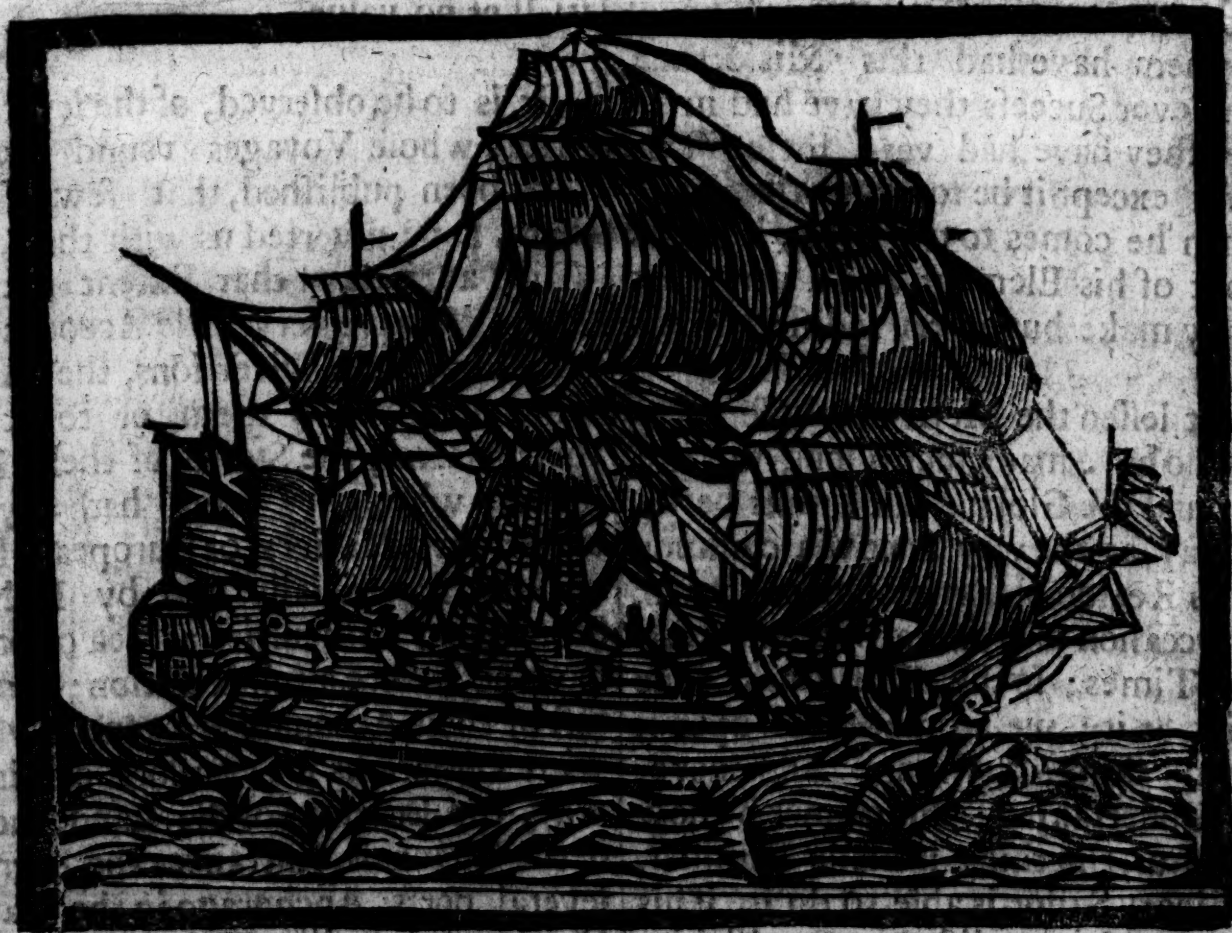


A NEW
VOYAGE
ROUND THE

WORLD.



CHESTER;

Printed by W. COOKE, in Foregate-street.

A NEW
VOYAGE
ROUND THE
WORLD.



IT has for some Ages been thought so wonderful a thing to sail the Tour or Circle of the Globe, that when a Man has done this mighty Feat, he presently thinks it deserves to be recorded like Sir Francis Drake's. So as soon as Men have acted the Sailor, they come a-shore and write Books of their Voyage, not only to make a great Noise of what they have done themselves, but pretending to shew the way to others to come after them, they set up for Teachers, and Chart-makers to Posterity. Though most of them have had this Misfortune, that whatever Success they have had in the Voyage, they have had very little in the Relation; except it be to tell us, that a Seaman when he comes to the Press, is pretty much out of his Element, and a very good Sailor may make but a very indifferent Author.

I do not lessen the Merit of those Gentlemen who have made such a long Voyage, as that round the Globe; but I must be allow'd to say, as the way is now a common Road, the Reason of it thoroughly known, and the Occasion of it more frequent than in former Times; so the World has done wondering at it; we no more look upon it as a mighty thing, a strange and never heard of Undertaking; this cannot be now expected of us, the thing is made Familiar, every ordinary Sailor is able to do it, if his Merchants are but qualified to furnish him for so long a Voyage; and he that can carry a Ship to Lisbon, may with the same Care carry it round the World.

Some tell us, it is enough to wonder at a thing nine Days, one would reasonably

then conclude, that it is enough that sailing round the World has been wondered at above a hundred Years: I shall therefore let the Reader know, that it is not the Rarity of going round the World that has occasioned this Publication, but if some Incidents have happened in such a Voyage, as either have not happened to others, or as no other People, though performing the same Voyage, have taken notice of, then this Account may be worth publishing, though the thing, viz. The Voyage round the World, be in itself of no value.

It is to be observed, of the several Navigators whose Voyages round the World have been published, that few, if any of them, have diverted us with that Variety which a Circle of that Extent must needs offer. We have very little Account of their Landings, their Divertions, the Accidents which happened to them, or to others by their Means; the Stories of their Engagements, when they have had any Scuffle either with Natives, or European Enemies are told superficially and by Halves; the Storms and Difficulties at Sea or on Shoar, have no where a full Relation; and all the rest of their Accounts are generally fill'd up with Directions for Sailors coming that way, the Bearings of the Land, the Depth of the Channels, Entrances and Barrs, at the several ports, Anchorage in the Bays, and Creeks, and the like Things, useful indeed for Seamen going thither again; and how few are they? but not at all to the purpose when we come expecting to find the History of the Voyage.

Another sort of these Writers have just given us their long Journals, tedious Accounts of



of their long work, how many Leagues they sail'd every Day; where they had the Winds, when it blew hard and when softly; what Latitude in every Observation, what Meridian Distance, and what Variation of the Compaſs. Such is the Account of Sir John Norbrough's Voyage to the South-Seas, adorn'd with I know not how many Charts of the famous Streight of Magellan, a Place only now famous for showing the Ignorance of Sir John Norbrough, and a great many wise Gentlemen before him, and for being a passage they had no need to have troubled themselves with, and which nobody will ever go through any more.

Such also are the Voyages of Captain John Wood, to Nova Zemla, at the Charge of the Publick, in King Charles the II^d's time and Martin Forbisher to the North West Passages, in Queen Elizabeth's time; all which, are indeed full of their own Journals, and the Judgments of sailing, but have little or nothing of Story in them, for the use of such Readers who never intend to go to Sea, and yet such Readers may desire to hear how it has far'd with those that have, and how Affairs stand in those remote Parts of the World.

For these Reasons, when first I set out upon a cruising and trading Voyage to the East, and resolv'd to go any where, and every where that the Advantage of Trade or the Hopes of Purchase should guide us, I also resolv'd to take such exact notice of every thing that pass'd within my Reach, that I would be able, if I liv'd to come home, to give an Account of my Voyage, differing from all that I had ever seen before, in the nature of the Observations, as well as the manner of relating them, And as this is perfectly new in its Form, so I cannot doubt but it will be agreeable in the Particulars, seeing either no Voyage ever made before, had such Variety of Incidents happening in it, so useful and so diverting, or no Person that sail'd on those Voyages, has thought fit to publish them after this manner.

Having been fitted out in the River of Thames, so lately as the Year 1713, and on a Design perhaps not very consistent with the Measures taking at that time

for the putting an end to War, I must be allowed to own I was, at first, obliged to act not in my own Name, but to put in a French Commander into the Ship, for the Reasons which follow, and which those who understand the manner of Trade upon closing the late War, I mean the Trade with Spain, will easily allow to be just and well grounded,

During the late War between Great Britain and her Confederates on one side, and the united Crowns of France and Spain on the other side, we all know the French had a free Trade into the South Seas; a Trade carried on with the greatest Advantage, and to the greatest Degree, that any particular Commerce has been carried on in the World for many Ages past; insomuch that we found the Return of Silver that came back to France by those Ships, was not only the enriching of the Merchants of St. Malo, Rochell, and other Ports in France, some of whom we saw get immense Estates in a few Years, even to a Million Sterling a Man. But it was evident, the King of France himself was enabled, by the Circulation of so much Bullion through his Mint, to carry on that War with very great Advantage.

It was just at the Close of this War, when some Merchants of London looking with Envoy on the Success of that Trade, and how the French, notwithstanding the Peace would apparently carry it on, for some Years at least, to infinite Advantage, began to consider whether it might not be possible to come in for a Inack with France as they were ally'd to Spain, and yet go abroad in the Nature of a private Cruiser,

To bring this to pass, it was thought proper, in the first Place, to get a Share, if possible, in a new Design of an East India Trade in Flanders, just then intended to be set up by some British Merchants, by the Assistance of an Imperial Charter or at least under Colour of it; and so we might go to Sea in a threefold Capacity, to be made use of as occasion might present; viz. when on the Coast of New Spain we sought to trade, we were Frenchmen, had a French Captain, and a sufficient Number of French Seamen, and Flemish or Walloon Seamen, who

who spoke French, so to appear on all proper Occasions. When at Sea we met with any Spanish Ship worth our while, we were English Cruisers, had Letters of mart from England, had no Account of the Peace, and were fitted for the Attack. And when in the East Indies we had occasion to trade, either at the English or Dutch Settlements, we should have Imperial Colours, and two Flemish Merchants, at least, in Appearance, to transact every thing as we found Occasion. However, this last Part of our Project fail'd us, that Affair not being fully ripe.

As this mysterious Equipment may be liable to some Exceptions, and perhaps to some Enquiries, I shall, for the present conceal my Name, and that of the Ship also: By Enquiries, I mean Enquiries of private Persons concerned; for as to publick Enquiries, we have no Uneasiness, having acted nothing in Contradiction to the Rules and Laws of our Country, but I say, as to private Persons, it is thought fit to present their Enquiries, to which end, the Captain in whose Name I write this, give me Leave to make use of his Name, and conceal my own.

This Ship sail'd from the River the 20th of December 1713, and went directly over to the Coast of Flanders, lying at an Anchor in Newport Pitts, as they are called, where we took in our French Captain Jean Michael Mirlotte, who, with 32 French Seamen, came on board us in a large Snow from Dunkirk, bringing with them 122 small Anchors or Runlets of Brandy, and some Hampers and Casks of French Wine, in Wicker'd Bottles: While we were here, we lay under English Colours with Pendants flying, our Ship being upwards of 500 Tun, and had 46 Guns mounted, mann'd with 356 Men: We took the more Men on board because we resolved, as Occasion should present, to fit ourselves with another Ship, which we did not question we should meet with in the South Seas.

We had also a third Design in our Voyage, though it may be esteemed an Accident to the rest, viz. We were resolved to make some Attempts for new Discoveries, as Opportunity offered; and we had two Persons on board who were exceedingly well qua-

lified for our Direction in this Part, all which was derived from the following Occasion.

The Person who was principally concerned in the Adventure, was a Man not only of Great Wealth, but of great Worth; he was particularly addicted to what we call New Discoveries, and it was indeed upon his Genius to such Things, that the first Thought of the Voyage was founded: This Gentleman told us, that he had already sent one Ship fully equipt and furnish'd for a new Attempt, upon the North West or North East Passages, which had been so often in vain tried by former Navigators; and that he did not question the Success, because he had directed them by new Measures, and to steer a Course that was never attempted yet; and his Design in our Voyage was to make like Discoveries towards the South Pole; where, as he said, and gave us very good Reasons for it, he did not doubt but we might discover even to the Pole itself, and find out New Worlds and New Seas, which had never been hard of before.

With these Designs, this Gentleman came in to the other part of our Project, and contributed the more largely, and with the more Freedom, to the whole, upon that Account; in particular, all the needful Preparations for such Discoveries, were made wholly at his Expence, which I take Notice of here, as being most proper in the Beginning of our Story, and that the Reader may the less wonder at the odd way we took to perform a Voyage which might with much more Ease have been done by the usual and ordinary way.

We sail'd from the Coast of Flanders the second of February, and without any extraordinary Incident made the Coast of Gallo-way in Ireland the tenth, where we stay'd and took in a very extraordinary Store of Provisions, three times as much as usual; the Beef being also well pickled or double pickled, that we might have a sufficient Reserve for the Length of our Voyage, resolving also to spare it as much as possible.

We had a very rich Cargo on board, consisting of all sorts of British Manufactures suitable for the Spanish Trade in their
(To be continued) West-

West-Indies; and as we aim'd at nothing of Trade till we came to the Spanish Coast, we sail'd directly for the Canary Islands; having not fully resolv'd whether we would make our Voyage to the South Seas first, and so round the Globe by the East Indies, and upon the Discoveries we were directed to, and then cross the great Pacifick Ocean to the West Coast of America, as was at last resolv'd.

We made the Canaries the eleventh of February, and coming to an Anchor there to take in some fresh Water, we put out French Colours, and sent our Boat on Shore, with a French Boatswain and all French Seamen, to buy what we wanted: They brought us on board five Butts or Pipes of Wine, and some Provisions, and having fill'd our Water, we set sail again the thirteenth: In this time we call'd a Council among ourselves, by which way we should go as above.

I confess, I was for going by the Cape of Good Hope first, and so to the East Indies, then keeping to the South of Java, go away to the Moluccoes, where I made no doubt to make some Purchase among the Dutch Spice Islands, and so go away to the Philippines; but the whole Ships Company, I mean of Officers, were against me in this Scheme, altho' I told them plainly that the Discoveries which would be made in such a Voyage as that, were the Principal Reasons why our chief Owner embark'd in the Adventure, and that we ought to regard the End and Design of our Voyage; that it would certainly in the Close of thing amount to the same, as to Trade, as if we went the usual way, seeing the Places we were to go to were the same one way as the other, and it was only putting the Question which we should go to first; that all the Navigators on such Voyage as these, went by the South Seas first, which would be no Honour to us at all; but if we went by the East Indies first, we should be the first that ever went such a Voyage, and that we might make many useful Discoveries and Experiments in trying that Course, that it would be worth our while, not only to go that way, but to have all the World take notice of it, and of us for it.

I used a great many Arguments of the like Nature, but they answer'd me most ef-

fectually, with laying before me the Difficulties of the Voyage, and the contrary Methods, of Trade, which, in a Word, made the going that way impracticable: First, the Difficulty of the Voyage, over the vast Ocean call'd the Pacifick Sea, or South Seas, which if we kept, a Southern Latitude, and took the variable Winds as we should find them, as I propos'd to do, might very well be a Voyage of six or eight Months, without any sight of Land, or supply of Provisions or Water, which was intolerable; that as to Trade, it was preposterous and just setting the Voyage with the Bottom upward; for as we were laden with Goods, and had no Money, our first Business was to go to the South Seas, where our Goods, were wanted, and would sell for Money and then to the East Indies, where our Money would be wanting, to buy other Goods to carry home, and not to go to the East Indies first, where our Goods would not sell, and where we could buy no other for want of Money.

This was so strong a way of reasoning, that they were all against me, as well French as English, and even the two Agents for Discoveries, submitted to it, and so we resolv'd to stand away from the Canaries, to the Coast of Brasil, thence upon the Eastern Coast of South America to Cape Horn, and then into the South Seas; and if we met with any thing that was Spanish by the way, we resolv'd to make Prize of it, as in a time of War.

Accordingly we made the Coast of Brasil in about twenty six Days, from the Canary Islands, and went on Shore at Cape St. Augustine, for fresh Water, afterwards we put into the Bay of All Saints, got some fresh Provisions there, and about an Hundred very good Hogs, some of which we kill'd and pickled up their Flesh, and carried the rest on board alive, having taking on board a great Quantity of Roots, and Maiz, or Indian Corn, for their Food, which they thriv'd on very well.

It was the last of March when we came to the Bay, and having stay'd there fourteen Days to furnish ourselves with all Things we wanted, we got Intelligence there, that there were three Ships at the Buenos Ayres, in the Rio de la Plata, which were

were preparing to go for Europe, and that they expected two Spanish Men of War to be their Convoy, because of the Portuguese Men of War which were in Brasil, to Convoy the Brasil Fleet.

Their having two Spanish Men of War with them for their Convoy, took away a great deal from the Joy we had entertain'd at the News of their being there, and we began to think we should make little or nothing of it: However, we resolv'd to see the utmost of it, and particularly if our double Appearance would not now stand us in some stead.

Accordingly we went away for the River of Plate, usual spreading French Colours, we went boldly up to Beunos Ayres, and sat in our Boat, mann'd with Frenchmen, pretending to be home-ward bound from the South Seas and in want of Provisions. The Spaniards receiv'd us with Civility enough, and granted us such Provisions as we wanted; and here we found, to our great Satisfaction, that there was no such thing as any Spanish Man of War there; but they said they expected one, and the Governor there for the King of Spain asked our French Officer if we would take one of their Ships under our Convoy; monsieur Mirlotte answer'd him warily that his Ship was deep laden, and foul, and he could not undertake any thing, but if they would keep him Company, he would do them what Service he could; but that also, as they were a rich Ship, they did not Design to go directly to France, but to Martinico, where they expected to meet with some French Men of War to Convoy them home. This Answer was so well manag'd, tho' there was not one Word of Truth in it, that none of the three Ships for the other two were not ready, resolv'd to come away with us, and, in an evil Hour for them, they did so.

To be short, we took the innocent Spaniards into our Convoy, and sail'd away to the Northward with them, but were not far at Sea, before we let them know what Circumstances they were in, by the following Method: We were about half a League a Head of them, when our Captain bringing too, and hailing up our Courses, made a Signal to the Spaniards for the Captain to come on board, which he very readily did;

as soon as he was on board, our Captain let him know that he was our Prisoner, and all his Men, and immediately manning their Boat with thirty of our own Men, we sent them on board their Ship to take Possession of her but order'd them that they should behave civilly to the Men on board, and plunder'd, upon Condition he would give us a just Account of his loading, and deliver peaceably to us what Riches he had on board then we also agreed, that we would restore him his Ship, which by the way was chiefly laden with Hides, Things of no Value to us, and that the Ship also, was an old Vessel, strong but often doubled, and therefore a very heavy sailer, and consequently not at all fit for our purpose, tho' we greatly wanted a Ship to take along with us, we having both too many Men, and being too full of Goods, as I have said above.

The Spanish Captain, tho' surpriz'd with the Stratagem that had brought him thus into the Hands of his Enemies, and greatly enrag'd in his Mind at being circumvented, and trapp'd out of his Ship yet shew'd a great Presence of Mind under his Misfortune; and, as I verily believe he would have fought us very bravely, if we had let him know fairly what we were, so he did not at all appear dejected at his Disaster, but capitulated with us as if he had been taking Sword in Hand. And one time when our Captain and he could not agree, and the Spanish Captain was a little threaten'd, he grew warm; told the Captain that he might be ill us'd, being in his Hands, but that he was not afraid to suffer whatever his ill Fortune had prepar'd for him, and he would not, for fear of ill Usage yield to base Conditions; that he was a Man of Honour, and if he (our Captain) was so too, he demanded to be put on board his own Ship again, and he should see he knew how to behave himself. Our Captain smil'd at that, and told him, he was not afraid to put him, on board his own Ship and fight her again, and that if he did so, he was sure he could not escape him; the Spanish Captain smil'd too, and told him, he should see (if he did) that he knew the way to Heaven from the Bottom of the Sea, as well as any other Road, and that Men of Courage were never at a Loss to conquer their Enemy one way or other; intimating, that he would sink by his Side rather than be taken.

ken, and that he would take care to be but a very indifferent Prize to him, if he was conquered.

However, we came to better Terms with him afterward; and, in short, having taken on board all the Silver, which was about 200,000 Pieces of Eight, and whatever else we met with that was Valuable, among the rest, his Ammunition, and six Brass Guns. We perform'd Conditions, and sent him into the Rio de la Plata again with his Ship, to let the other Spanish Captains know what scouring they had escaped.

We got a good Booty here indeed, but were disappointed of a Ship; however, we were not so sensible of that Disappointment now, as we were afterwards: For as we depended upon going to the South-Seas, we made no doubt of meeting with Vessels enough for our Purpose; what followed, we shall soon see.

We had done our Work here, and had neither any Occasion, or any Desire to lie any longer on this Coast, where the Climate was bad, and the Weather exceeding hot, and where our Men began to be very uneasy, being crowded together so close all in one Ship; so we made the best of our way South.

We met with some stormy Weather in these Seas, and particularly a North-West Blast, which carried us for eleven Days, or thereabouts, a great way off to Sea: But as we had Sea Room enough, and a stout strong built Ship under us, perfectly well prepar'd, rite and firm, we made light of the Storms we met with, and soon came in to our Voyages way again; so that about the fourth of May we made Land in the Latitude of 45 Degrees 12 Minutes South.

We put in here for fresh Water, and finding nothing of the Land mark'd in our Charts, we had no Knowledge of the Place, but coming to an Anchor at about a League from the Shore, our Boat when in quest of a good watering place; in pursuit of this, they went up a Creek about two Leagues more where they found good Water, and fill'd some Casks, and so came on board to make their Report.

The next Day we came into the Creek's

Mouth, where we found six or eight Fathom Water within Cable's Length of the Shore, and found fresh Water enough, but no People or Cattle, tho' an excellent Country for both.

Of this Country, I made many Observations, suitable to the Design and Desire of our ingenious Employer and owner, and which are one end of publishing this Voyage: I shall mention only one here, because I shall come to speak it again on another Occasion more largely. My Observation here, is as follows:

An Observation concerning the Soil and Climate of the Continent of America, South of the River De la Plata, and how suitable to the Genius, the Constitution, and the Manner of living of Englishmen, and consequently for an English Colony.

THE particular Spot which I observe upon, is that Part of the Continent of America which lies on the Shore of the North Seas, as they are call'd, tho' falsely; for they are more properly the East Seas, being extended along the East Shores of South America. The Land lies on the same East side of America, extended North and South from Costa Deserta, in 42 Degrees, to Port St. Julian, and 49 Degrees and a half, being almost 500 Miles in Length full of very good Harbours, and some navigable Rivers; the Land is a Plain for several Scores of Miles within the Shore; with several little rising Hills, but no where mountainous or stony; well adapted for inclosing, feeding, and grazing of Cattle; also for Corn, all sorts of which would certainly not only grow, but thrive very well here; especially Wheat, Rye, Pease, and Barley, Things which would soon be improv'd by Englishmen, to the making to the making the Country rich and populous, the raising great Quantities of Grain of all Sorts, and Cattle in Proportion. The Trade which I propose for the Consumption of all they Produce, and the place whither to be carried, I refer to speak of by itself, in the further Pursuit of this Work.

I return now to the Pursuit of our Voyage. We put to Sea again the 10th of May with fair Weather and a fair Wind; tho' a Season of the Year, 'tis true, when we might have reason to expect some Storms being what we might call the Depth of their Winter. However, the Winds held Northerly

Northerly, which there are to be esteem'd the warm Winds, and bringing mild Weather; and so they did till we came into the Latitude of 50 Degrees, when we had strong Winds and sequally Weather, with much Snow and Could, from the S. W. and S. W. by W. which blowing very hard, we put back to Port St. Julian, where we were not able to stir for some time.

We weigh'd again the 29th and stood South again past the Mouth of the Straights of Magallen, a Streight Famous for many Ys for being thought to be the only Passage out of the North Seas into the South Seas, and therefore I say famous for some Ages; not only in the Discovery of it by Megellan a Spanish Captain, but of such Significance, that for many Years it was counted a great Exploit to pass this Streight, and few have ever done it of our Nation but that they have thought fit to tell the World of it, as an extraordinary Business, fit to be made publick as an Honour to their Name. Nay King Charles the II^d thought it worth while to send Sir John Narbrough on purpose to pass and take an exact Survey of this Streight, and the Map or Plan of it has been published by Sir John himself, at the publick Expence, as a useful thing.

Such a mighty and valuable thing also was the passing this Straight, that Sir Francis Drake's going thro' it, gave birth to that famous old Wives Saying, viz. That Sir Francis Drake shot the Gulph; a Saying that was current in England for many Years, I believe near a Hundred after Sir Francis Drake was gone his long Journey of all; as if there had been but one Gulph in the World, and that passing it had been a Wonder next to Hercules cleansing the Egean Stable.

Of this famous Place I could not but observe on this Occasion, that as Ignorance gave it its first Fame, and made it for so many Ages the most eminent Part of the Globe, as it was the only Passage by which the whole World could be surrounded, and that it was every Man's Honour that had pass'd it, as above; so now it is come to the full End or Period of its Fame, and will in all probability never have the Honour to have any Ship, Vessel, or Boat, go through it more, while the World remains, unless

(which is very improbable) that Part of the World should come to be fully inhabited. I know some are of Opinion, that before the full Period of the Earth's Existence, all the remotest and most barren Parts of it shall be peopled; but I see no Ground for such a Notion, but many Reasons which would make it appear to be impracticable, and indeed impossible; unless it should please God to alter the Situation of the Globe as it respects the Sun, and place in a direct, as it now moves in an oblique Position; or that a new Species of Mankind should be produced, who might be as well qualified to live in the Frozen Zone, as we are in the Temperate, and upon whom the Extremity of Cold could have no Power. I say, as there are several Parts of the Globe where this would be impracticable, I shall say no more than this, that I think 'tis a groundless Suggestion.

But to return to our Voyage; we pass'd by the Mouth of this famous Streight De Magellan, and those others which were pass'd thro' by Le Maire the Dutch Man afterwards; keeping an offing of six or seven Leagues, went away South, till we came into the Latitude of 58. when we would, as we had tried three Days before, have stretched away South West, to have got into the South Seas, but a strong Gale of Wind took us at W. N. W. and tho' we could (lying near to it) stretch away to the Southward, yet as it overblow'd, we could make no Westward way; and tho' we had under us an excellent strong well built Vessel that valued not the Waves, and made very good work of it, yet we went away to Leeward in spite of all we could do, and lost ground again. We held it out however, the Weather being clear, but excessive cold, till we found ourselves in the Latitude of 64.

We call'd our Council several times, to consider what we should do, for we did but drive to Leeward; the longer we strove with it, the Gale held still, and to our Apprehensions it was set in, blowing like a kind of Monsoon, or Trade Wind tho' in those Latitudes I know there is no such thing properly call'd, as a Trade Wind.

We tried (the Wind abating) to beat up again to the North, and we did so; but it was by running a great way to the East;

(To be continued)

and

and once I believe we were in the Longitude of St. Helena, tho' so far South, but it cost us infinite Labour and near six Weeks time, at length we made the Coast, and arrived again at the Port of St. Julian the 20th of June, which, by the way, is the Depth of their Winter.

Here we resolv'd to lay up for the Winter, and not attempt to go so far South again at that time of Year, but our eager Desire of pursuing our Voyage prevail'd, and we put out to Sea again, having taken in fresh Provisions, such as are to be had there; that is to say, Seals, Penguins, and such like Trade, and with this Recruit we put to Sea, I say, second time.

We had this time worse Luck than we had before, for the Wind setting in at South West, blew a Storm, and drove us with such Force away to Sea Eastward, that we were never able to make any way Southward at all, but were carried away with a continual Storm of Wind, from the same Corner, or near it, our Pilot, or Master, as we call'd him, finding himself often obliged to go away before it, and it kept us out so long at Sea, and we were gone so far to the North East, Eastward, that he advis'd us to stand away for the Cape of Good Hope; and accordingly we did so, and arrived at the Cape the last Day of July. We were now dead hearted indeed, and I began to revive my Proposal of going to the East Indies, as I had at first intended; and to answer the Objection which they made against it, as being against the Nature of Trade, and that we had nothing on board but European Goods, which were not fitted for the East Indies, where Money only was suitable to the Market we were to make. I say, to answer this Objection, I told them, I would engage that I would sell our whole Cargo at the Phillipine Islands, as well as on the Coast of America; for that those Islands being Spanish, our Disguise of being French would serve us as well at the Phillipines, as it would in New Spain; and with this particular Advantage, that we should sell here for four times the Value as we should on the Coast of Chili, or Peru; and that when we had done, we could load our Ship again there, or in other Places in the Indies, with such Goods as would come to a good Market again in New Spain.

This I told them was indeed what had not been practis'd, nor at any other time would it be practicable: For as it was not usual for any Ships to go from the East-Indies to the Phillipines, so neither was it usual for any European Ships to trade with Freedom to the South Seas, till since the late War, when the French had the privilege: And I could not but be amaz'd that the French had never gone this way, where they might have made three or four Voyages in one, and with much less Hazard of meeting with the English or Dutch Cruisers; and have made twice the Profits which they made the other way, where they were frequently out three or four Years upon Return; whereas here they might make no less than three Returns, or perhaps four in the same Voyage, and in much less time.

They were now a little surpriz'd for in all our first Debates we had nothing of this Matter brought in Question; only they entertain'd a Notion that I was going upon strange Projects, to make Discoveries, search for the South Pole, plant new Colonies, and I know not how many Whims of their own, which were neither in my Designs, or in my Instructions. The Person therefore who was our Supra Cargo, and the other Captain whose Name I have not mentioned, together with the French Captain Marlotte, and the rest who had all oppos'd me before, came chearfully into my proposal, only the Supra Cargo told me in the Name of the rest, that he began to be more sensible of the Advantages of the Voyage I had propos'd, than he was before; but that as he was entrusted, together with me, in the Government of the trading Part, for I was impower'd equally with him too; he begg'd I would not take it ill that he desir'd I would let him farther into that Particular, and explain myself at least as far as I thought fit.

This was so just a Request, and so easy for me to do, and above all, was made with so much good Manners and Courtesy, that I told him, if I had been otherwise determin'd, the courteous and good humour'd way, with which he requir'd it, would constrain me to it; but that however I was very ready to do it, as he was entrusted with the Cargo equally with me, and that it was
a Piece

a Piece of Justice to the Owners, that who they thought fit to trust, I should trust also; upon this I told him. My Scheme was as follows :

First I told him, that as the Phillipine Islands receiv'd all their European Goods from Acapulco in America by the King of Spain's Ships, they were obliged to give what Price was imposed upon them by the Merchants, who brought those Goods by so many Stages to Acapulco. For Example; the European Goods or supposed English Goods in particular, with which they were loaden, went first from England to Cadiz, from Cadiz by the Galloons to Porto Bello, from Porto Bello to Panama, from Panama to Acapulco; in all which Places, the Merchants had their several Commissions and other Profits upon the Sale; besides the extravagant Charges of so many several ways of Carriage, some by Water some by Land, and besides the King's Customs in all those Places; and that after all this, they were brought by Sea from Acapulco to the Phillipine Islands, which was a prodigious Voyage, and were then generally sold in the Phillipine Islands at three Hundred per Cent. advance.

That in the room of all this, our Cargo being well bought and well sort'd, would come to the Phillipine Islands at once, without any landing or relanding, and without any of all the Additions of Charge to the first Cost as those by the Way of New Spain had upon them; so that if we were to sell them at the Phillipine Islands a Hundred per Cent. Cheaper than the Spaniards usually sold, yet we should get abundantly more than we could on the Coast of Peru, tho' we had been allow'd a free Trade there.

That there was but two Objections to this Advantage, and these were, our Liberty of Trading, and whether the Place would consume the Quantity of Goods we had: And to this I had much to answer; First, That it was well known to the Phillipine Isles, that the King of France and Spain were united firmly together; that the King of Spain had allowed the King of France's Subjects a free Trade in his American Dominions, and consequently that it would not be denied there; but on the other hand, that if it was denied by

the Governor, yet there would be room to find out a Trade with the Inhabitants, and especially with the Chinese and Japan Merchants, who were always there, which Trade, the Governor could not prevent; and thus we could not fear a Market for all our Cargo, if it was much greater than it was.

That as to the Returns, we had the Advantage either way: For First, We should be sure to receive a great Part of the Price of our Goods in Chinese or Japan Gold and Silver, or in Pieces of Eight, or if we thought fit to trade another way, we might take on board such a Quantity of China Damasks, and other wrought Silks, Muslins, and Chints, China Ware, and Japan Ware; all which, would be immediately sold in America; that we should carry a Cargo of these Goods to New Spain, infinitely to our Advantage, being the same Cargo which the four great Acapulco Ships carry back with them every Year: That when we had gone to the South Seas with this Cargo, of which we knew we should make a good Market, we had nothing to do but to come back, if we thought fit, to the East Indies again, where we might load for England or Flanders, such Goods as we thought proper; or if we did not think fit to take so great a Run, we might go away to the South, and round by Cape Horn into the Atlantick Ocean, and perfect those Discoveries, which we made part of, in the Beginning of our Voyage.

This was so clear a Scheme of Trade, that he seem'd surpriz'd with it, and fully satisfied in every Part of it. But the Captain then objected against the Length of the Voyage to the South Seas from the Phillipines, and rais'd several Scruples about the Latitude which we should keep in such a Voyage; that we should not be able to carry any Provisions which we could take on board in those hot Countries, that would keep for so long a Run, and several other Difficulties; to all which, I made answer, that when we had sold our Cargo at the Phillipines, and found our Advantages there to answer our Desires, I would not oppose our returning from thence directly to England, if they found it needful; or if they thought a farther Adventure would not answer the Risques we were to expect

in it; and that we would never have any Dispute about that.

This satisfied them fully, and they went immediately with the News to the Men, as what they thought would please them wonderfully, seeing they were mighty uneasy but two or three Days before, about their being to go back again to the South of America, and the Latitude of 64, where we had not only been twice driven back, as if Heaven had forbidden us to pass that way, but had been driven so far to the South, that we had met with a most severe Cold, and which pinched our Men exceedingly, who being come, as we might say, a hot Weather Voyage, were but ill furnish'd for the Weather usual in Latitude of 64.

But we had a hard Task to go through than we expected, upon this Occasion; and it may stand here upon Record, as a Buoy or Beacon to warn Officers and Commanders of Ships, Supra Cargoes, and such as are trusted in the Conduct of the Voyage, never to have any Disputes among themselves. (I say not among themselves) about the Course they shall take, or whither they shall go; for it never fails to come among the Men after them, and if once the Debate is but named on the Out-side of the Great Cabbin Door it becomes immediately a Dispute among the Officers upon the Quarter Deck, the Lieutenants, Mates, Purser, &c. from thence it gets afore the Mast, and into the Cook Room, and the whole Ship is immediately divided into Factions and Parties; every Fore-mast Man is a Captain, or a Director to the Captain; every Boatswain, Gunner, Carpenter, Cockswain, nay, and even the Cook, sets up for a Leader of the Men; and if two of them join Parties, 'tis ten to one but it comes to a Mutiny, and perhaps to one of the two last Extremes of all Mutinies, viz. running away from the Ship, or running away with the Ship.

Our Case was exactly thus, and had issued accordingly for ought I know, if we had not been in a Port, where we got immediate Assistance, and that by a more than ordinary Vigour in the Management too,

I have mentioned the first time when

we call'd a Council about our Voyage at the Canaries, and how it was carried against my Opinion not to go to the East-Indies, but to go to the South Seas, about by Cape Horn: As the Debate of this was not at all conceal'd, the Officers of the Ship, viz. the two Lieutenants and two Mates, the Purser, and others, came in, and went out, and not only heard all we said, but talk'd of it at liberty on the Quarter Deck, and where they pleas'd, till it went among the whole Ship's Crew. It is true, there came nothing of all this at that time, because almost all the Votes being against my Opinion, as I have said already, the Ship's Company seem'd to join in naturally with it, and the Men were so talk'd into the great Prospect of Gain to themselves, by a Voyage to the South Seas, that they look'd upon me, who at the Bottom had the chief Direction of Things, to be Nobody, and to have only made a ridiculous Proposal, which was against all their Interest; and I perceiv'd clearly after this that they look'd upon me with an evil Eye, as one that was against their Interest; nay and treated me with a Sort of Contempt, too, as one that had no Power to hurt them, but as one, that if things were left to me, would carry them on a Wild Goose Chase they knew not whither.

I took no Notice of this at first, knowing that in the Process of Things I should have Opportunity enough to let them know I had Power to oblige them many ways; as also, that I had Authority sufficient to command the whole Ship, and that the Direction of the Voyage was principally in me, tho' I being willing to do every thing friendly, had too easily, and I may say too, foolishly, put that to the Vote, which I had a Right to have commanded their Compliance with. The ill Consequences of which, appear'd not, for some time, but broke out upon the Occasion of our new Measures, as you shall here.

As soon as we had determin'd, as you have heard, our Voyage amongst ourselves, in the great Cabbin, the Supra Cargo and Captain Marlotte, as above, went out upon the Quarter Deck, and began to talk of it among the Officers, Midshipmen, &c. and to give them their Due, they talk'd of it very honestly, not with any Complaint of being over-

over-ruled, or over-persuaded, or the like, but as a thing that was fully agreed to among us in the great Cabin.

The Boatswain, a blunt, furly, bold Fellow, as soon as he heard of it, very well, said he, so we are all come back into Captain -----'s blind Proposal; why this is the same that every body rejected at the Canaries, and now because we are driven hither by contrary Winds, those Winds must be a Reason why we must undertake a preposterous, ridiculous Voyage, that never any Sailor would have proposed, and that Man never went before. What does Captain ----- think that we can't find our Way to the Coast of America again? and because we have met with cross Winds, we must never meet with fair ones? I warrant him, let us go up the Streight of St. Helena, we will soon reach the Rio de la Plata and Port St. Julian again, and get into the South Seas too, as others have done before us.

The Gunner took it from the Boatswain, and he takes with one of the Midshipmen in the same Dialect. For my part, says he I shipp'd my self for the South Seas when I first came aboard the Ship, and in hopes of good Booty, and if we go thither, I know nothing can hinder us Wind and Weather permitting: But this is such a Voyage, as no Man ever attempted before; and whatever he proposes can have nothing in it for the Men, but horrid Fatigue, violence Heats, Sickness and Starving.

One of the Mates takes it from him and he says as openly, I wonder what a Plague the rest of the Gentlemen mean, they were all against Captain ----- when he started this whimsical Voyage before, and now they came all into it on a sudden, without any Consideration; and so the Project of one Man must ruin the most promising Voyage in the World, and be the Death of above 200 as stout Fellows as ever were to gather in one Ship in this Part of the World.

One of the Midshipmen followed the Mate, and said, we were all promis'd that another Ship should be gotten, either purchas'd or taken, and that the first Ship we took, should be mann'd and victualled out of this Ship, where we were double mann'd

and crowned together enough to bring an Infection among us, in such hot Climates as we are going into; and if we were in the South Seas, we should easily buy a Ship, or take a Ship for our Purpose, almost where we would; but in all this Part of the World there is no such thing as a Ship fit for an English Man to set his Foot in. We were promis'd too, that when we got into such a Ship, we that enter'd as Midshipmen should be prefer'd to Officers as we were qualified, and as our Merit should recommend us. What they are going to do with us now, I can't imagine, unless it be to turn us a fore the Mast when half the Fore-mast Men are dead, and thrown over Board.

The Master, or Pilot of the Ship, heard all these Things, and sent us word into the great Cabin, of all that pass'd, and, in short, assured us, that if these Things went a little farther, he was afraid they would come up to a Mutiny; that there was great Danger of it already, and that we ought to apply some immediate Remedy to it, or else he thought it would be too late: He told me the Particulars also, and how the whole Weight of their Resentment seem'd to intend to a quarrelling at my Command, as believing that this Project of going the East Indies, was wholly mine; and that the rest of the Officers being a little influenc'd by the Accident of our being driven so far out of our Way, were only biass'd in the rest by my Opinion; and as they were all against it before, would have been so still if it had not been for me; and he fear'd, if they went on, they might enter into some fatal Measures about me, and perhaps resolve to set me ashore in some barren uninhabited Land or other, to give me my Belly full of new Discoveries, as it seems some of them had hinted, and the second Mate in particular.

I was far from being insensible of the Danger I was in, and indeed of the Danger the whole Voyage, Ship and all, was in; for I made no Question, but that if their brutish Rage led them to one villainous Action, they would soon go on to another and the Devil would take hold of that Handle to represent the Danger of their being punish'd for it when they came home; and so, as has been often the Case prompt them

(To be continued)

to

to Mutiny against all Command, and run away with the Ship.

However, I had presence of Mind enough to enter into proper Measures for our general Safety, and to prevent the worst in case of any Attempt upon me, first I represented the Case to the rest of the Gentlemen, and ask'd if they would stand by me, and by the Resolutions which we had taken for the Voyage; then I called in to our Assistance, the chief Mate who was a Kinsman of one of our Owners, a bold, resolute Gentleman, and the Purser, who we knew was faithful to us; as also, the Surgeon, and Carpenter: I engag'd them all to give me first their Opinions whether they were convinc'd of the Reasonableness of my Scheme for the Voyage I had propos'd; and that they might judge for themselves, laid it all before them again, arguing every Part of it so clearly to them, that they were convinc'd entirely of its being the most rational Prospect of the Voyage for us, of any we could go about.

When I had done this, I recommended it to them to expostulate with the Men, and, if possible, to keep them in Temper, and keep them in their Duty; but at the same time to stand all ready, and upon a Signal which I gave them, to come all to the Steerage, and defend the great Cabbin Door with all the other Hands who they could be sure of and in the mean Time, to be very watchful over the Morions of the Men, and see what they drove at.

At the same time, I fortified myself with the French Captain, and the Supar Cargo, and the other Captain; and by the Way, all the French Captain's Men were true to me (and he true to us) to a Man. We then brought a sufficient Store of Ammunition and small Arms into the great Cabbin, and secur'd the Steerage, as also the Round House, so that we could not possibly be surpriz'd.

There was nothing done that Night, but the next Morning I was inform'd, that the Gunner and second Mate were in a close Cabal together, and one or two of the Midshipmen, not that they had sworn to one another, nor that they would not go the Voyage as was propos'd, for that might

have ended in their running away, which I should not have been sorry for; but in short, their Oath was, that the Ship should not go the Voyage; which I was presently to understand, that they had some Measures to take to prevent my Design of the Voyage to the Phillippines, and that perhaps this was to run away with the Ship to Madagascar, which was not far off,

I had however, this apparent Encouragement in this Case, viz. that as the Contrivance was yet but two Days old, for it was but two Days since they had any Notice of our Intentions to go, they would be some Days caballing and forming an Interest among the Men, to make up a Party strong enough to make any Attempt; and that as I had a strong Set of Men who would be heaving and contriving one way and the other way to get the Men over to their Opinion, so that at least it would be some time before they could make the Party up.

The thing was rightly conjectured, and the three Men above who had made themselves the Head of the Mutineers, went on apace, and my Men encreased too, as much as could be desired for the time; but the Friday after, which was about five Days from the first Discovery, one of the Midshipmen came and desired to spake with me, and desir'd it might not, if possible, be known that he was with me. I ask'd him if he desir'd to be along? he said no, I might appoint who I thought convenient that I could trust, but that what he had to say, was of the last Importance to all our Lives, and that therefore he hop'd I would be very sure of them who I trusted in such a Case. Upon this I told him, I would name the chief Mate, the French Captain, and the Supra Cargo, and in the mean time, I bid him not be too much surpriz'd, for that I had already some Warning, of the Thing which I believed he had to tell me of, and that I was preparing all Things to disappoint it: That however I should not value his Fidelity the less, and that he might speak freely his Mind before those Men for they were all in the Secret already, and he might be sure both of Protection and Reward.

Accordingly, I bid him go out upon the Quarter-Deck, and walk there, and that when

when the chief Mate went off into the Round House, he should go down between Decks as if he was going down into his Cabbin to sleep, and that when he heard the chief Mate call the Cabbin Boy, a Black of mine, whose Name was Spartivento, he should take that for a Signal that the Steerage was clear, and he might come up and should be let into the great Cabbin; all which, was so manag'd, and in so short a Time, that he was with us in the great Cabbin in a Quarter of an Hour after the first Conference, and none of the Men perceiv'd it.

Here he let me into the whole Secret, and a black Project it was, viz. That the second Mate, the Gunner, three Midshipmen, the Cockswain, and about six and thirty of the Men, had resolv'd to mutiny and seize upon all us who were in the new Project, as they call'd it; and to confine us first, then to set us on Shore, either where we were, or some where else, and so carry the Ship away to the South Seas, and then to do as they thought convenient; that is to say, in a Word, to seize upon me, the other Captain, the French Captain, the Cupra Cargo, chief Mate, Doctor, and Carpenter, with some others, and run away with the Ship.

He told me, that they had not fully consulted all their Measures, nor gain'd so many of the Men as they intended; that they were to sound some more of the Men the next Morning, and as soon as they had made their Number up fifty, they were resolv'd to make the Attempt, which they did not question would be by Thursday, and this was Monday Morning, and that if they were then ready, they would make the Onset at changing the Watch the same Evening. He added, that as they were to go on Shore the next Morning for fresh Water, I should know the Truth of it by this; that the second Mate would come to me, and tell me that they wanted more Water, and to know if I pleas'd the Boat should go on Shore, and that if I pleas'd he would go with them, or any else who I pleas'd to appoint; and that upon Supposition that I would leave it to him, to take who he thought fit to go with him, he would then take Occasion to choose the principal Conspirators, that they might

when they were on Shore, consult Measures for good and all.

I had all that Day (Monday) to order my Preparations, and upon this plain Intelligence, I resolv'd to lose no time, nor was it long before I resolv'd what to do; for as their Design was desperate, so I had nothing but desperate Remedies to provide. Having therefore, as I say, settled my Measures, I call'd for the Cockswain, and bid him man the Pinnace, for that I was to go on Shore, and I appointed only the Supra Cargo, and the Surgeon, and the French Captain, to go with me.

There were no English Ships in the Road, but there were about five Dutch Ships homeward bound waiting for more, and three outward bound. As I pais'd by one of the outward bound East India Ships, the French Captain, as we had agreed before, pretended to know the Ship, and that the Commander was his old Acquaintance, and ask'd me to give him Leave to visit him, and told me he was sure he would make us all welcome. I seem'd unwilling at first, telling him, intended to go on Shore and pay my Respect to the Governor, and, as was usual, to ask him Leave to buy some Provisions, and that the Governor would take it very ill if I did not go: However, upon his alledging that we would not stay, and that the Dutch Captain upon his going on board, would, he was sure, give us a Letter of Recommendation to the Governor, by which we should have every thing granted that we could desire. Upon this, and his Importunity, I seem'd to consent, and we went all on board.

Captain Merlotte, who spoke Dutch very well, hal'd the Ship, ask'd the Captain's Name, and then ask'd if he was on Board; they answer'd yes, then he bid them tell him the Captain of the English Ship was come to visit him; upon which, immediately the chief Mate bade them man the Side, and stood at the Side to receive us, and before we could get up, the Dutch Captain came upon the Quarter deck to meet me, and with great Civility invited me into his Cabbin; and while we were there, the chief Mate, by the Captain's Order, entertain'd the Boat's Crew with the like Civility.

When

When we were in the Cabin, Captain Merlotte told the Dutch Captain that we came indeed to him in the Form of a Visit, but that our Business was of the greatest Importance, and begg'd we might speak to him of it in the hearing of none but such as he could trust: The Captain told us with the greatest open heartedness imaginable, that tho' we were Strangers to him, yet we look'd like honest Men, and he would grant our Desire; we should speak it in the hearing of none but those we could trust, for there should be No-body by but ourselves.

We made him fully sensible that we knew how obliging that Compliment was, but begg'd he would admit any who he thought worthy to be trusted with a Secret of the last Importance. He then carried it as far the other Way, and told us, that then they might call in the whole Ship's Company, for that there was not a Man in the Ship but he could trust his Life in his Hands, However, upon the whole, he sent every Body out of the Cabin but us three and himself, and then desir'd we would speak our Minds freely.

Captain Merlotte, who spoke Dutch, begun, but the Captain interrupted him, and ask'd if the English Captain, (meaning me) spoke Dutch; he said no, upon which he ask'd Captain Merlotte if he spoke English, and yes he said upon which he let me know that he understood English, and desir'd I would speak to him in English.

I was heartily glad of this, and began immediately with the Story, for we had time little enough. I told him that he was particularly happy, that as he said, could put his Life in the Hands of any Man, the meanest in his Ship; that my Men were unhappily the reverse of his; and then beginning at the first of the Story, I gave him a full Account of the whole, as related above.

He was extremely affected with it, and ask'd me what he could do to serve me, and assur'd me, that he would not only do what in him lay, but would engage all the Ships in the Road to do the like, and the Governor also on Shore. I thanked him very sincerely, and told him, that what at present was the Thing I thought lay be-

fore me, was this, viz. that the che Conspirators would be on Shore to morrow, with one, or perhaps two, of our Boats, to fetch Water, and get some fresh Provisions, and I would be very glad to have them seiz'd upon by Surprise, when they were on Shore, and that then I thought I could master the rest on Board well enough.

Leave that to me, says he, I'll give the Governor Notice this Evening, and as soon as they come on Shore they shall all be seiz'd; but, says he, if you think they may incline to make any Resistances, I'll write a Line to the Governor, and give it you now; then when your Men go on Shore, order one or two of the principal Rogues to go and wait on the Governor with the Letter from you and when he receives it, he shall secure them there; so they will be divided and taken with the more Ease.

In the mean time, adds he, while this is doing on Shore, I'll come on board your Ship, with my Long Boat and Pinnace, and as many Men as you please, to repay you the Compliment of this Visit, and assist you in reducing the Rest.

This was so kind, and so compleatly what I desir'd, that I could ask nothing more or less; and I accepted his Visit in his Barge, which I thought would be enough, but was afraid that if more came, our Men might be alarm'd, and take Arms before I was ready; so we agreed upon that, and that if I desir'd more Help, I should hang out a Signal, viz. Antient on the Mizen Top.

All Things being thus consulted, I return'd on Board, pretending to our Men that I had spent so much time on Board the Dutch Ship, that I could not go on Shore; and indeed some of my Men were so drunk, that they could scarce sit to their Oars; and the Cockswain was so very drunk, that I took Occasion to ask Leave publicly, to leave him on Board till the next Day, giving the Dutch Captain also, a Hint that he was in the Conspiracy, and I should be glad to leave him on that Account.

The next Day about Nine o'Clock, the second Mate came to me, and told me they wanted more water, and if I pleased to order the Boat on Shore, he would go, if I thought fit, and see if he could get any fresh Provisions, the Purser, being indispos'd: I told him yes, with all my Heart, that the Dutch Captain

Captain last Night had given me a Letter to the Governor, to desire we might be furnish'd with whatever we had Occasion for, and that I had Thoughts of calling for him to go on Shore and deliver it, and that perhaps the Governor might make him some Present in Compliment to the English Nation.

He seem'd extremely pleas'd at this, and even elevated, and going out to give Orders about the Boat, order'd the Long Boat, and the Shallop, and came in again, and ask'd me who I pleas'd to have go along with him; I answered, smilingly to him, pick and choose them yourself, only leave the Pennance's Crew that went with me yesterday, because they must go on Board again to carry the Dutch Captain a little Present of English Beer that I am going to lend him, and fetch a board their drunken Cockswain, who was so drunk, we was fain to leave him behind us,

This was just what he wanted; and we found he chose all the chief Rogues of the Conspiracy; such as the Boatswain, the Gunner, the Midshipmen we spoke of, and such of the Foremast Men as he had secur'd in his Design, and of the rest, we judg'd they were all in the Plot, because he took them with him; and thus having the Long Boat and Shallop, with about six and thirty Men in them, away they went to fill Water.

When they came on Shore, they had presently three Dutch Men, sent by the Dutch Captain, unperceiv'd by them, to be Spies upon them, and to mark exactly what they did; and at the same Time, they found three Boats of Dutch Men at the watering Place, for the Captain had gotten two Boats to go on Shore from two other Ships full of Men also, having acquainted them with the Design. As soon as our Boats came on Shore, the Men appear'd to be all very much engag'd in something more than ordinary, and instead of separating, as it was expected they should, they went all into one Boat, and there they were mighty busy engag'd in Discourse one with another.

The Dutch Captain had given the Charge of these Things to a brisk, bold

Fellow, his Mate, and he took the Hints the Captain gave him, so well that nothing could have been better: for finding the Men thus in a Kind of a Cabal, he takes four of his Men with Muskets on their Shoulders, like the Governor's Men, and goes with them to the English Men's Boat, and asks for their Officer, the second Mate, who upon this appears: He tells them he comes from the Governor, to know if they were English Men, and what their Business was on Shore there: The Mate answer'd, they came from on board the English Ship, that they were driven there by Strefs of Weather, and hop'd they might have Leave to Water and buy Necessaries for their Money. He told them he suppos'd the Governor would not refuse them when he knew who they were, but that it was but good Manners to ask Leave: The English Man told him that he had not yet fill'd any Water, or bought any Provisions, and that he had a Letter to the Governor, from the Captain, which he suppos'd was to pay the usual Civilities to him, and to give him the Civility of asking Leave, as was expected.

The Dutch Man answer'd, that was Heal weel, that he might go and carry it if he pleas'd then, and if the Governor gave them Leave, all was right and as it should be; but that the Men could not be permitted to come on Shore till his Return. Upon this, away goes the second Mate of our Ship, and three of the Men with him, whereof the Gunner was one; for he had ask'd the Dutch Men how many he might carry with him, and he told him three or four; and those he took, you may be sure were of the particular Men, who he had a Confidence in, because of their conversing together by the Way.

When they came to the Governor, the Mate sent in a Message first, viz. That he was come from on board the English Ship in the Road, and that he had a Letter from the Captain to his Excellence. The Governor, who had Notice given him of the Business, sends out word, that the Gentlemen should send in the Letter, and the Governor would give them an Answer: In the meantime, there appear'd a Guard of Soldiers at the Governor's House, and the four English Men were let into the outer Room, where

where the Door was shut after them, and the Soldiers stood without the Door, and more Soldiers in another Room between them and the Parlour which the Governor sat in.

After some time, the Mate was call'd in, and the Governor told him, that he had read the Letter which he brought, and ask'd him by an Interpreter, if he knew the Contents of it? he answer'd No: The Governor replied, he supposed not, for if he had, he would scarce have brought it; at the same time told him, he was oblig'd to make him and all his Men Prisoners at the Request of their own Captain, for a Conspiracy to raise a Mutiny and run away with the Ship. Upon which, two great fat Dutch Men came up to him and bid him deliver his Sword, which he did with some Reluctance, for he was a stout, desperate, and strong Fellow; but he saw it all to no purpose to dispute or resist.

At the same time, the three Men without were made Prisoners also, by the Soldiers. When the Governor had thus secured these Men, he call'd them in and enquir'd the Particulars of the Case, and expostulated with them very courteously upon such a horrid, villainous Practice, and enquir'd the Particulars of the Case and expostulated with them very courteously upon such a horrid villainous Practice, and enquir'd of them what the Occasion could be; and herein all they had to say in their Defence, told them he could do nothing in it more, till their Captain came on Shore, which would be in a Day or two, and that in the mean Time, they must be content to remain in Custody, which they did, separated from one another. They were very civilly treated, but strictly kept from speaking one with another, or sending Messages to one another, or to the Boats.

When this was done, the Governor sent six Files of Musqueteers down to the watering Place, with Order to secure all the English Men in the two Boats, which was done. They pretended to make some Resistance at first, being all very well arm'd; but the Seamen of the three Dutch Long Boats, joining themselves to the Soldiers, and Notice being given the English Sea-

men, that if they fir'd one Gun, they should have no Quarters, and especially their two principal Men, the chief Mate, and Gunner, being absent, they submitted, and were all made Prisoners also.

When this was done, of which the Dutch Captain had Notice, by a Signal from the Shore, he came off in his Shallop, with about sixteen Seamen, and five or six Gentlemen and Officers, to pay his Visit to me. I receiv'd him with all the Appearance of Ceremony imaginable, caused a handsome Dinner to be prepar'd for him, and caus'd his Men to be treated upon the Deck, and made mighty Preparation for a Feast.

But in the Middle of all this, Captain Merlotte, with all his French Men, being thirty-two, appear'd in Arms on the Quarter Deck; the Dutch Captain's Attendants stood to their Arms on the Main Deck, and I, with the Supra Cargo, the Doctor, and the other Captain, leaving the Dutch Captain and some Men in the great Cabin as a Reserve, came to the Steerage Door, cleared the Steerage behind me, and stood there with a Cutlash in my Hand, but said nothing; neither was there a Word spoke any where all the while.

In this Juncture, the chief Mate, the faithful Midshipmen, the Carpenter, and the Gunner's Mate, with about twenty Men, who they could trust, went fore and aft been Decks, and secur'd all the particular Men that we had the least Suspicion of, being no less than thirtyfive more: These they secured, bringing them up upon the Steerage, where their Hands were ty'd behind them, and they were commanded not to speak one Word to one another, upon pain of present Death.

When this was done, the chief Mate came to me to the Steerage Door, and passing by, went forward on with his Men, enter'd the Cook Room Door. Their might be still about eighty Man upon the Forecastle, and Midships upon the open Decks; and there they stood staring, and surpriz'd at what was doing, but not being able to guess in the least what was meant, what was the Cause of it or what was intended to be done farther.

When

When I found all Things ready, I stept forward a step or two, and beckoning to the Mate to command Silence, I told the Men, that I was not dispos'd to hurt any Man, nor had I done what I now did, but by necessity, and that I expected they should all submit; that if any one of them made the least Resistance, he was a dead Man, but that if they would be easy and quiet, I should give a very good Account to them all, of every Part of the Voyage, or Scheme of a Voyage which I had laid, and which had been so ill represented to them.

Then I caused my Commission or Letter of Mart to be read to them all, by which it appear'd, that I was really chief Commander of the Ship, and had a Right to direct the Voyage as I thought best; with a Paper or written Instructions, sign'd by the Owners and Adventurers, and directed to me, with another Paper of Instructions to all the Officers, to be directed by me in all Things; which indeed, was all News to them, for they did not think I was the chief Commander of the Ship and Voyage.

When I had done this, I gave them a long and full Account of the Reasons why I thought it best as our present Circumstances were stated, not to go to the South Seas first, but to go away to the Phillipine Islands, and what great Prospect of Advantage to the Owners there was, as well as to the Men; and that I wonder'd much that such Measures were taking in the Ship as I heard there were; and that I was not, they might see, unprovided of Means to reduce every one of them to their Duty by Force, and to punish those that were guilty as they deserv'd; but that I rather desir'd to win them by Kindness; and that therefore I had resolv'd, that if any of them had any Reason to dislike the Voyage, they should be fairly set on Shore, and should go to the second Mate and his Comrades: And as I named the second Mate, I told them what Circumstances they were in, and how effectually they were secur'd.

This astonish'd them, and surpriz'd them exceedingly, and some of them enquir'd more particularly into the Circumstances of the second Mate and his Fellows: I told

them they were safe enough, and should remain so: For as I could prove they had all a villainous Design to run away with the Ship, and set me on Shore, either here, or in a worse Place, I thought that only upon Account of my own Safety, such Men were not fit to go in the Ship, being once capable to entertain such horrid, mischievous Thoughts, or that could be guilty of such a Villainy; and that if any of them were of their Minds, they were very welcome, if they thought fit, to go to them. At this Word, some bold Rogues upon the Forecastle, which I did not discern, by Reason of the Number that stood there, cried out One and all, which was a Cry at the Time of Mutiny and Rebellion, that was certain, and in its Kind very dangerous.

However, to let them see I was not to be daunted with it, I call'd out to one of the Men among them, who I saw upon the Forecastle: You Jones says I, tell me who that was, and come away from them, for I'll make an Example of him whoever it is, Will. Jones flunk in among the rest, and made me no Answer, and immediately One and all was cried again, and a little Huzza with it, and some of the Men appeared to have some Fire Arms with them. There was a great many of them, and I presently foresaw, that if I went to the Extremity, I should spoil the Voyage, tho' I conquer'd them; so I bridled my Passion with all my Might, and said calmly, very well Gentlemen, let me know what it is you mean by One and all; I offer'd any of you that did not like to go the Voyage, might quit the Ship, is that it you intend by One and all? If so, you are welcome, and pray take Care to do it immediately; as for what Chests or Cloaths you have in the Ship, you shall have them all with you. Upon this I made the chief Mate, who was now come to me again, advance a little with some more Men, and get between the Men upon the Forecastle, and those who were upon the Main Deck; and, as if he had wanted Room, when he was gotten between them, he said to them, Stand aft a little Gentlemen, and so crowded them towards me.

As they came nearer and nearer to where I stood, I had Opportunity to speak to

to them singly, which I did calmly and smiling: Why how now Tom, says I to one of them, what are you among the Mutineers? Lord Sir, says Tom, not I, they are mad I think, I have nothing to say to them, I care not were I go, not I, I'll go round the Globe with you, it's all one to me. Well Tom, says I, but what do you among them then? Come away into the Steerge, and show yourself an honest Man. So Tom comes in, and after him another, and then two more; upon my saying to Tom what do you do among them, one of the Fellows says to one of the Officers that stood at a little Distance from me, what does the Captain mean by saying among them, what does he reckon us to be in the Plot? He is quite wrong, we are all ignorant, and surpris'd at it. He immediately tells me this, and I was glad, you may be sure, to hear it, and said aloud to the Man he spoke to, If they are honest Men and would not appear in this Villany, let them go down between Decks and get out of the Way, that they may have no share in the Punishment, if they have none in the Crime. With all my Heart, says one, God bless you Captain, says another, and away they dropt one by one in at the Steerage Door, and down between Decks every one to his Hammock or Cabbjn, till there was not above five or six of them left.

By this time our two Boats appear'd from the Shore, being both mann'd with Dutch Men, viz. the Dutch Captain's Mate and about twenty of his Men, all the Water Casks full, but not a Man of mine with them, for they were left on Shore in safe Custody.

I waited till they came on board, and then turned to the Men on the Forecastle, I told them they should go on Board the Boats immediately, as soon as the Buts of Water were hoisted in. They still said One and all, they were ready, desir'd they might go and fetch their Cloathes: No, no, says I, not a Man of you shall set your Foot any more into the Ship; but go get you into the Boats, and what is your own, shall be given you into the Boat.

As I spoke this in an angry Tone, and with a Kind of Passion, that look'd pro-

vok'd to a high Degree, they began to see they had no Room to choose; and some of them slipt down the Scuttle into the Cook Room. I had order'd the Officer who was there, who was one of the Midshipmen, to wink at it, and let as many come down as offer'd it, and the honest Man did more than that; for he went to the Scuttle himself, and as if he had whisper'd, so that I should not hear him, call'd them one by one by their Names, and argu'd with them: Prithee Jack, says he to one of them, don't you be distracted and ruin yourself to gratify a rash drunken Humour; if you go into the Boat you are undone, you will be seiz'd as soon as you come a Shore as the rest are, and will be sent to England in Irons, and there you Will be infallibly hang'd; Why you are certainly all mad. Jack replies, he had no design to Mutiny, but the second Mate drew him in, and he did not know what to do, he wish'd he had not meddled, but he was undone, now what could he do? Do, says the Midshipman, leave them for shame, and slip down here, and I'll see and get you off if I can. Accordingly he pull'd him down, and after him so many got out of Sight the same Way that there was not above 17 or 18 left upon the Forecastle.

I seem'd to take no Notice of that, till at last one of the Men that was left there with his Hat of Cap in his Hand, stepping just to the Edge of the Forecastle which was next to me, said with a very respectful Manner, That I saw how many had flunk away and made their Peace, or at least obtained Pardon, and that I might, perhaps, know that they who are left were only such as had their Duty there, being placed there of Course before the Mutiny begun, and that they had no hand in it, but abhorr'd it with all their Hearts, which he hoped I would consider and not joyn them with those that had offended, meerly because they came upon the Forecastle and mix'd there with the Men who had the Watch.

I told him if that was true it would be in their Favour, but I expected he would prove it to my Satisfaction before I accepted that for an Excuse. He told me it might, perhaps be hard to prove it, seeing the Boat-swain and his Mate, and the second Mate were

were gone, but the rest of the Ship's Crew could all testify that they were a Part of the Men whose Watch it was, and that they were upon the Forecastle by the Necessity of their Duty and no otherwise, and call'd such and such Men who were upon Duty with them to witness it, who did confirm it.

Upon this, I found myself under a Necessity, in Justice to the Men, to appear it: But my own Management was a Bite upon myself in it; for tho' I did allow the Midshipmen to wink at their slipping away as before, yet I made no Question but I should have some left to make Examples of; but as I could not go back from the Promise of Mercy which I had allow'd the Midshipman to offer in my Name: So I trick'd myself by their Mistake into a Necessity of pardoning them all, which was very far from my Design; but there was no Remedy.

However, the Men, when they were so happily escaped, desired the Midshipmen, who had been instrumental to deliver them, to assure me, that as they were sensible they had deserved very ill at my Hands, and that yet I had treated them thus kindly, they would not only reveal to me all the Particulars of the Conspiracy and the Names of those principally concern'd in it, but that they would assure me, they would never more dispute any of my Measures, but were all very ready to do their Duty as Seamen to what Part of the World soever I might think fit to go, or which Way I thought fit to carry them, whether outward or homeward, and that they gave me the tender of their Duty in this Manner with the utmost Sincerity and with Thankfulness for my having forgiven them that Conduct which was the Worst that a Seaman could be guilty of.

I took this very kindly, and sent them Word I did so, and that they should find they had taken the wiser Course, that I had an entire Confidence in their Fidelity, and that they should never find I would reproach them with, or use them the worse for what had past.

I must confess, I was very glad of this Submission of the Men; for tho' by the

Measures I had taken I was satisfied I should conquer them, and that I was safe from their Attempts; yet carrying it on by Resentment, and doing Justice upon the Offenders, whatever Advantage it had one Way had this Disadvantage in the Consequence, viz. that it would ruin the Voyage, for at least half the Men were in the Plot.

But having thus conquer'd them by good Usage, I thought my next Work was to enquire into the Mistakes which had been the Foundation of all this: So before I parted with the Men who had returned to their Duty, I told them, that as I had freely forgiven what was past, so I would keep my Word with them, that I would never reproach them with it; but that I thought it was necessary their Judgments should be convinc'd how much they were impos'd upon, as well as their Tempers be reduc'd by my Kindness to them. That I was of the Opinion that they had been abused in the Account given them of what I had design'd to do, and of the Reasons I had to give for doing it; and I would desire them to let me know afterwards, whether they had been faithfully inform'd of Things or not; and whether in their own Judgment, now, when they were freed from their Prepossessions they were under, they could object any Thing against it or no.

This I did with Respect to the other Men who I had made Prisoners in the Steerage, who I had the same Design to be as kind to as I had to these; but upon whom I resolv'd to work this Way, because, after all, I might have this Work to do over again if I should meet with any Disappointment or Miscarriage in the Voyage; or especially if we should be put to any Straits or Distress in the pursuing it.

In order to this, I cause the Voyage itself, and the Reasons of it, the Nature of the Trade I was to carry on by it, the Pursuit of it to the South Seas; and a Word, every Thing just as we had argued and settl'd it in the great Cabin, to be put into Writing and read them.

The Fellows, every one of them, declared they were fully satisfied in the Voyage it

it self, and that my Reasons for it were perfectly good, and that they had receiv'd a quite different Account of it; as that I would carry them into the Illand of Moluccas, which was the most unhealthy Part of the East-Indies, that I would go away to the South for new Discoveries; and that I would go away thence to the South Seas, which was a Voyage of such a Length that no Ship could victual for, that it was impossible to carry fresh Water such a Length, and in a Word, that it was a Voyage that would destroy us all.

It was the chief Mate and the Midshipman who took them all down the Scuttle, that brought me this Account from them; so I made him take two of those penitent Mutineers with him, and go to the Men in the Steerage, who he had made Prisoners at first, and see whether their Delusions were of the same Kind, and what Kind of Temper they were in. Accordingly he went to them directly, for this was not a Business that admitted giving them Time to club and cabal together, and form other Societies or Combinations which might have Consequences fatal to us still.

When he came to them, he told them, the Captain was willing to do all the Justice possible to his Men, and to use them on all Occasions with Equity and Kindness; I order'd him to enquire calmly what it was had mov'd them to these Disorders, and what it was which they had been made to believe was doing, that they could enter into Measures

so destructive to themselves, and to those who had entrusted them all with the Ship and Cargo; for that in a Voyage every Foremast Man, in his Degree, is trusted with the Safty of the whole Ship.

They answered it was the Mate; that they had never shewn themselves discontented, much less disorderly in the Ship; that they had on all Occasions, done their Duty thro' the whole Voyage till now, and that they had no ill Design upon any one, much less had they any Design to destroy the Voyage or injure the Captain; but that they were all told by the second Mate, that the Captain had impos'd upon them, that he had propos'd a Mad Voyage to the South Pole that would murder them all, and that they were to lay aside the Trading and Cruising Voyage which they came out upon, and were now to spend the whole Voyage in new Discoveries, by which the Men could propose nothing to themselves but Hardships, and perhaps perishing with Hunger and Cold; whereas, had they gone to the South Seas as was intended, they might all have been made; and that the Hazards with that Prospect, had some Sense in them; whereas in this Project there was nothing but certain Destruction.

The Mate deliver'd them a Copy of the Scheme I had propos'd, the Reasons of it, the Trade I had design'd, the Return I was to make, and every Thing as I have already mention'd it, and bid them take it and consider'd of it.

As I was justly provoked to see how I had been abused and misrepresented

presented to the Men, so they were astonish'd when they heard my Scheme and saw what Mischiefs they had been let into for they know not what, and without any Reason or just Consideration: And after they had debated Things a-while among themselves, they desir'd the chief Mate might come to them again, which he did. Then they told him that as they had been thus grossly abus'd and drawn into Mischiefs which they never design'd, by such plausible Pretences, and by being told such a long Story full of Lies, and to carry on a hellish Project of the second Mate's; they hoped then, being so much impos'd upon, would a little extenuate their Fault; that they were convinc'd, that the Captain had oppos'd nothing but what was very rational, and a Voyage that might be very profitable to the Owners and to themselves; and they entirely threw themselves upon the Captain's Mercy, and humbly begg'd Pardon, that if I pleas'd to forgive them they would endeavour to merit such Forgiveness by their future Behaviour; and that in the mean Time, they submitted to what Punishment I pleas'd to lay upon them: And particularly, that as they had forfeited, by their Conspiracy, all the Claim they had upon the Ship, and might have justly have been turn'd ashore at the first Land they came to, they were willing to fine a Discharge for their Wages due to them, which was now near eight Months a Man, and to be consider'd for the rest of the Voyage as they deserv'd. That they would all take a solemn Oath of Fidelity to do their Duty, to go wherever I would carry them, and

to behave with the greatest Submission and Diligence, in Hopes to gain my Favour by their Future Behaviour, and to shew their Gratitude for the Pardon I should grant them.

This was indeed just as I would have it, for I wanted nothing more than to have something offer'd, which I might give them back again; for I ever thought, and have found it by Experience to be the best Way; and Men were always secured in their Duty by a general Kindness, better than by absolute Dominion and Severity: Indeed my Opinion was justified in all the Measures I took with these Men; for as I found they were sufficiently humbled, and that I had brought them low enough I let them know, that it was not their Punishment but their Amendment that I desir'd; that I scorn'd to make a Prey of them, and take that forfeiture they had offer'd, so putting the Wages due to them for their Labour in my Pocket. But I sent them Word, I was very glad to hear that they was sensible how much they had been impos'd upon; that as it was not my Design to offer any thing to them, which they or any honest Man ought to refuse, so it was not my Desire to make any Advantage of their Follies, but what might tend to bring them back to their Duty; that as I had no Prospect that was inconsistent with their safety and Interest so I scorn to make a Profit of their Submission; that as to their Wages, tho' they had forfeited by their Mutiny, yet God forbid I should make it my Profit: And since forgiving their Offences was in my Power, the Crime being in one Particular an Offence against me, they should never be able to say I made a Gain

Gain of their Submission, and like the Pope should sell them my Pardon; that upon their solemn engaging to me never to offer the least Disturbance of any Kind in the Ship for the future, but to do their Duty faithfully and chearfully, I would forget all that was past; only this I expected viz that two of them who were particularly guilty of threat'ning the Life of Captain Merlotte, should be punish'd as they deserv'd.

They could not deny but this was most just; and they did not so much as offer to intercede for those two. But when one of the two mov'd the rest, they answer'd they could not do it, for they had receiv'd Favour enough for themselves, and could not desire any Thing of the Captain for their sakes, for ~~the~~ bad all deserv'd Punishment as well as they.

In a Word, the two Men were brought to the Geers, and soundly whipp'd and pickl'd; and they all prov'd very honest ever after: And these, as I said at first, were thirty-two in all.

All this while Captain Merlotte with his French Men were in Arms, and had Possession on the Quarter Deck to the Number of 23 stout Men; I had Possession of the Main-deck with 18 Men and the 16 Dutch Men, and my chief Mate, with the Midshipman had Possession of the Cook room and the Quarter-deck; the Dutch Captain, our Supra Cargo, the Surgeon, and other Captain kept the great Cabbin, with a Guard of 12 Mulqueteers without the Door, and about eight more within, besides Servants. Captain Merlotte's Man had also a Guard of eight Men in the

Round-house. I had now nothing to do but with my Men who were on Shore; and of these, fix of them were indifference, being Men not embark'd in the Design, but carry'd on Shore by the chief Mate, with a Design to engage them with him; so that indeed they fell into a Punishment before they fell into the Crime, and what to do with these Men was the Case.

The first Thing I did, was to dismiss my Visitor the Dutch Captain, who I had a great deal of Reason to think myself exceedingly oblig'd to: And first I handsomely rewarded his Men, to whom I gave four Pieces of Eight a Man; and having waited on the Captain to the Ship's Side, and seen him into his Boat, I fired him 21 Guns at his going off; for which he fired 25 when he came on board his Ship. The same Afternoon I sent my Pinnace on board him for my drunken Cockswain, and with the Pinnace I sent the Captain three dozen Bottles of English Beer, and a Quarter-cask of Canary, which was the best Present I had to make him; and sent every one of his other Seamen a Piece of Eight per Man; and indeed the Assistance I had from him deserv'd it; and to the Mate who acted so bravely with my Men on Shore I sent 50 Pieces of Eight.

The next Day I went on Shore to pay my Respects to the Governor, when I had all the Prisoners deliver'd up to me; the fix Men I caus'd to be immediately set at Liberty, as having been innocent, and brought all the rest on board tied Hand and Foot as

Prisoners

Prisoners, and continued them so a great while afterward as you shall hear: As for the second Mate, I try'd him formally by a Council of War, as I was empower'd by my Commission to do, and sentenced him to be hang'd at the Yard Arm: And tho' I suspended the Execution from Day to Day, yet I kept him in Expectation of the Halter every Hour; which, to some, would have been as grievous as the Hanging itself.

Thus we conquered this desperate Mutiny, all principally proceeding from suffering the private Disputes among ourselves, which ought to have been the Arcana of the whole Voyage, and kept as secret as Death itself could have kept it, I mean so, as not to come among the Seamen afore the Mast.

We lay here 12 Days, during which Time, we took in fresh Water as much as we had Casks for, and was able to stow. On the 13th of August we weigh'd and stood away to the East, designing to make no Land any more till we came to Java-Head, and the Streights of Sunda; for that Way we intended to sail: But the Wind sprung up at E. and at E. S. E. and blew so fresh, that we was oblig'd, after two Days beating against it, to bear away afore it, and run back to the Cape of Good-Hope.

While we were here, there came in two Dutch East-India Men more, homeward bound, to whom had happened a very odd Accident, as follows: They had been attack'd by a large Ship of 44 Guns, and a stout Sloop of eight Guns; the Dutch Ships resolv'd to assist one another, stood up to the French Man, for

such it seems he was, and fought him very warmly. The Engagement lasted six or seven Hours; in which the Privateer had kill'd them some Men; but in the Heat of the Fight, the Sloop receiv'd a Shot, which brought her Main-mast by the Board; and this caus'd the Captain of the Frigate to sheer off, fearing his Sloop would be taken; but the Sloop's Men took Care of themselves, for halling a little out of the Fight, they got into their own Boats, and a Boat which the Frigate sent to their Help, and abandoned the Sloop; which the Dutch Men perceiving, they mann'd out their Boats, and sent and took the Sloop with all that was in her, and brought her away with them.

The Dutch Men came into the Road at the Cape with the Prize while our Ship was there the second Time; and we saw them bringing the Sloop in a Tow, having no Mast standing but a little Pole-mast set up for the present, and her Mizzen which was also disabled and of little Use to her.

I no sooner saw her, but it came into my Thoughts, that if she was any Thing of a Sea-Boat, she would do our Business to a Tittle; and as we had always resolv'd to get another Ship but had been disappointed; this would answer our End exactly: Accordingly I went with my chief Mate in our Shallop, on board my old Acquaintance the Dutch Captain, and enquiring there, was inform'd of the Case, that it was a Prize taken as above, and that in all Probability the Captain that took her would be glad to part with her; and the Captain promised me to go on board the Ship that brought her in, and enquire about it, and let me know.

Accordingly

Accordingly the next Morning, the Captain sent me Word I might have her; that she carried eight Guns, had good Store of Provisions on board, with Ammunition sufficient, and I might have her and all that was in her for 1200 Pieces of Eight. In a Word, I sent my chief Mate back with the same Messenger and the Money; giving him Commission to pay the Money and take Possession of her if he lik'd her, which he did; and the Dutch Captain, my Friend, lent me Twelve Men to bring her off to us; which they did the same Day.

I was a little put to it for a Mast for her having not any Thing on board that we could spare that was fit for a Main-mast: But resolving at last to mast her not as a Sloop, but as a Brigantine, we made shift with what spare Pieces we had, and a spare Fore-top-mast, which one of the Dutch Ships helped me to, so we fitted her up very handsomely, made her carry 12 Guns and put 60 Men on board. One of the best Things we found on board her, was Casks, which we greatly wanted, especially for Barrelling up Beet and other Provisions, which we found very difficult; but our Cooper eked them out with making some new ones out of her old ones.

After staying here 16 Days more, we sail'd again indeed, I thought once we should never have gone away at all; for it is certain above half the Men in the Ship had been made uneasy, and there remained still some Mis-understanding of my Design, and a Supposition of all the frightful

Thoughts of making an Example of these I took care to let them know it too, in a Manner, that they had no Room to think it was unjust, but that I intended to have them all three hang'd: and I kept them about three Weeks in Suspence about it: However as I had no Intention to put them to Death, I thought it was a Piece of Cruelty something worse than Death to keep them continually in Expectation of it, and in a Place to where they had but little more than Room to breath.

So having been 17 Days gone from the Cape, I resolv'd to relieve them a little; and yet at the same Time remove them out of the Way of doing me any capital Injury if they should have any such Design still in their Heads: For this Purpose I caused them to be removed out of the Ship into the Brigantine, and there I permitted them to have a little more Liberty than they had on board the great Ship; and were two of them entered into another devilish Conspiracy, as wild and foolish as ever I heard of, or, as perhaps, was ever heard of; of which I shall say more in its Place.

We were now two sail in Company, and we went away from the Cape the 3d of September, Anno 1714. We found the Brigantine was an excellent Seaboat, and could bear the Weather to a Miracle, and no bad Sailor; she kept Pace with us on all Occasions, and in a Storm we had at S. S. E. some Days after, she shifted as well as we did in the great Ship, which made us all in Love with her.

This

This Storm drove us away to the Northward; and I once thought we should have been driven back to the Cape again; which if it had happened, I believe we should never have gone on with the Voyage; for the Men began to murmur again, and say we were bewitch'd, that we were beaten off first from the South of America, that we could never get round there, and now driven back from the South of Africa; so that in short it look'd as if Fate had determin'd this Voyage to be pursued no further. The Wind continued and blew exceeding hard; and in short, we were driven so far to the North, that we made the South Point of the Island of Madagascar.

My Pilot knew it to be Madagascar as soon as he had a clear View of the Land, and having beaten so long against the Sea to no Purpose, and being in Want of many Things, we resolv'd to put in; and accordingly made Port St. Augustine, on the West Side of the Island, where we came to an Anchor in eleven Fathom Water, and a very good Road.

I could not be without a great many Anxious Thoughts upon our coming into this Island; for I knew very well that there was a Gang of desperate Rogues here, especially on the Northern Coast, who had been famous for their Pyracies; and I did not know but that they might be either strong enough as Pyrates, to take us or Rogues enough to entice a great many of my Men to run away. So I resolv'd neither to come neare enough the Shore to be surpriz-

ed, nor to suffer any of my Men to go on Shore, such excepted as I could be very secure of.

But I was soon inform'd by a Dutch Man who came off to me with some of the Natives in a kind of Canvas Boat, that there was no Europeans there but himself, and the Pyrates were on the North Part of the Island; that they had no Ship with them of any Force, and that they would be glad to be fetch'd off by any Christian Ship; that they were not above 200 in Number, their chief Leaders, with the only Ships of Force they had, being out a Cruising on the Coast of Arabia, and the Gulph of Persia.

After this, I went on Shore myself with Captain Merlotte, and some of the Men who I could trust; and we found it true as the Dutch Man had related. The Dutch Man gave us a long History of his Adventures, and how he came to be left there by a Ship he came in from Europe, which, he running up into the Country for Sport, with three more of his Comrades went away without them, and left them among the Natives, who however used them very well, and that how he served them for an Interpreter and a Broker, to bargain for them with the European Ships for Provisions. Accordingly he engag'd to bring us what Provision we pleas'd, and propos'd such Trinkets in Return, as he knew the Natives desir'd, and as were of Value little enough to us, but he desir'd a Consideration for himself in Money, which tho' it was of no Use to him there, he said, it might be hereafter; and

and as his Demand was but 20 Pieces of Eight, we thought he very well deserv'd it.

Here we bought a great Quantity of Beef, which having no Casks to spare, we salted, and then cur'd it in the Sun by the Dutch Man's Direction and it prov'd of excellent Use to us thro' the whole Voyage, for we kept some of it, till we came to England, but it was then so hard, that a great Hatchet would hardly cut it.

While we lay here, it came into my Thoughts, that now was a good Time to execute Justice upon my Prisoners, so I call'd up the Officers to a Kind of Council of War, and propos'd it to them in general Terms not letting them know my Mind, as to the Manner of it. They all agreed that it was necessary, and the second Mate, Boatswain and Gunner, had so much Intelligence of it from the Men, that they prepar'd for Death, as much as if I had sign'd a Dead Warrant for their Execution, and that they were to be hang'd at the Yard Arm. But in the Middle of those Resolves, I told the Council of Officers, my Design was, to the North Part of the Island, where a Gang of Pyrates were said to be settled, and that I was persuaded I might get a good Ship among them, and as many Men as we desired, for that I was satisfyed the greatest Part of them were so wearied of there present Government, that they would be glad of an Opportunity to come away, and especially such as had either by Force, or rash hasty Resolutions been as it were surpriz'd into that Sort of Life; that I had been inform'd they were very far from being in such a formidable Posture, as they had been represented to us in Europe, or any thing near so numerous, but that on the contrary

we should find them poor divided, in Distress, and willing to get away upon any Terms they could.

Some of the Officers of the Ship differed from me in Opinion; they had receiv'd such Ideas of the Figure those People made in Madagascar, from the Common Report in England, that they had no Notion of them but as of a little Commonwealth of Robbers; that they were immensely rich, that Captain Avery was King of the Island, that they were near 8000 Men, that they had a good Squadron of stout Ships, and that they were able to resist a whole Fleet of Men of War, having a Harbour so well fortified at the Entrance into it, that there was no coming at them without a good Army for Land Service and the like.

I convinc'd how impossible this was to be true, and told them all the Discourse I had with the Dutch Man, at the Place where I now was, who had a full Account from several of them, who had come down to St. Augustines in little Boats, in order to make their Escape from them, and to get Passage for Europe; whom he had always assisted, and got them off, as any Ship touch'd at that Port; and who all agreed in their Relation of their Particulars, which were indeed miserable enough, saying that they wanted neither Victuals or Cloathes.

In a Word, I soon brought them to enter into the Reason of it, and to be of my Opinion, and accordingly I order'd to get ready, and in three days Time weigh'd, and stood away for the North of the Island; for by the Way we did not now communicate our Debates or Resolves to the

the Men before the Mast, as had been done before, we had indeed enough of that already.

While we were thus coasting the Island, to the North and in the Channel or Sea between the Island and the Main of Africa, it came into my Thoughts, that I might now make Use of my Traytors to my Advantage & their own to, and that I might, if they were honest, gain my End, and get a full Intelligence of the People I had my Eye upon, and if they were still Traytors they would desert and go over to the Pyrates, and I should be well rid of them, without the Necessity of bringing them to the Yard Arm; for I was very uneasy in my Mind about hanging them too, nor could I ever have been brought to do it, I believe, whatever Risque I had run from their mutinous Disposition.

I was now got in the Latitude of 15 Degrees and a half, South of the Line, and began to think of standing in for the Shore; when I ordered the second Mate who lay in Irons in the Brigantine, to be brought on board the great Ship, and to be call'd up into the great Cabin. He came in great Concern, tho' he was of himself a very bold and resolute Fellow, yet as he made no doubt, that he was sent for to Execution, he appeared thoroughly soften'd and quite another Man, than he was before.

When he was brought in, I caused him to be set down in a Nook of the Cabin, where he could not stir to offer any Violence to me, if he had any Will to it, two large Chests being just before him; and I order'd all my People to withdraw, except Captain Merlotte and the Supra Cargo; and

then turning myself to the Criminal, I told him he knew his Circumstances I need not relate them, and the Fact for which he was brought into that Condition; that I had hitherto from time delay'd his Execution, contrary to the Opinion of the rest of the chief Officers, who in full Council had unanimously condemn'd him; that I had a sudden thought come into my Head, which, if he knew how to merit Mercy, and to retrieve his Circumstances by his future Fidelity, might once again put it into his Power, not only to save his Life, but to be intrusted in the Ship again, if he inclined to be honest; that however if he had no Inclination to merit by his Service, I would put it to his Choice either to undertake with Courage and Fidelity what I had propos'd to him, in which Case he might expect to be very well treated, or if not, I would pardon him as to the Death he had Reason to expect, and he, with his two Fellow Criminals, should be set on Shore to go whether they pleas'd.

He waited, without offering to speak a Word, till I made a full Stop, and then ask'd me if I gave him Leave to answer: I told him yes; then he ask'd if I gave him Leave to speak freely, and would not take Offence at what he might say; I told him he should speak as freely as if he had never offended; and that as I had given him his Life, I now would give him my Word nothing he could say should revoke the Grant; and that he should not only go freely on Shore, for I expected by his Words that he had made that Choice, but that I would give him the Lives of his two fellow Prisoners;

ners; and would give the Arms and Ammunition, and any Thing else that was reasonable for them to ask, or necessary to their subsisting on Shore in such a Country.

He told me then, that had it been at any other Part of the World than at Madagascar, he would readily have chosen to have gone on Shore; nay, tho' the Place had been really desolate and uninhabited; that he did not object because my Offer was not very generous and kind, and it would be always with regret that he should look back upon the Mercy he should have received, and how ill he had deserv'd it at my Hands.

But that as it was at this Place that I mentioned setting him at Liberty, he told me, that tho' he had been mutinous and disorderly, for which he acknowledg'd he had deserv'd to die, yet he hop'd I could not think so ill of him as to believe he could turn Pyrate; and begg'd that rather than entertain such hard Thoughts of him, I would execute the worst Part of the Sentence and send him out of the World a Penitent, and an honest Man, which he should esteem far better than to give him his Life in a Condition in which he could preserve it upon no other Terms than those of being the worse of villains he aded, that if there was any Thing he could do to deserve so much Mercy as I intend him, he begg'd me that I would give him Room to behave himself as became him, and he would leave it wholly to me, to use him as he should deserve, even to the recalling the Pardon that I had granted him.

I was extremely satisfied with what he said, and more particularly with the Manner of his Speaking it; I told him I was glad to see that he had a Principle of so much Honesty, at the Bottom of a Part so unhappy as he had acted; that I would be very far from prompting him to turn Pyrate, and much more from forcing him to do so; and that I would according to his Desire put an Opportunity into his Hands to shew himself a new Man, and by his Fidelity to wipe out all that was past: And then, without any more Ceremony, I told him my whole Design, which was to send him, and four or five more Men with him, on Shore among the Pyrates as Spies to see what Condition they were in, and to see whether there was any Apprehensions of Violence from them, or whether they were in the mean Circumstances that I had Reason to believe they were in; and lastly, whether they had any Ship or Vessel which might be bought of them, and whether Men might be had to increase our Company; that is to say, such Men as being penitent for their Rogueries, and tried with their Miseries, would be glad of an Opportunity of turning honest Men before they were brought to it by Distress and the Gallows.

He embraced the Offer with the greatest Readiness, and gave me all the Assurances that I could desire of his Fidelity. I then ask'd him whether he thought his two fellow Prisoners might be trusted upon the same Foot. He ask'd me if I would take it for a Piece of Sincerity, if after a Trial, he should tell me his Mind, and

and would not be displeased if he declin'd speaking his Thoughts till he had talk'd with them. I told him he should be at Liberty to give his farther Answer after he had propos'd it to him; but I insist'd upon his Opinion first, because it was only his Opinion that I ask'd now; whereas if he reported it them, then he had no more to do but to report their Answer. He then ask'd me if I would please to grant him one Thing, viz. that whatever his Opinion should be, that what he should say should be no Prejudice to them in their present Condition; I told him it was a reasonable Caution in him, and I would assure him that whatever he said should not do them any Prejudice; and to convince him of it, I gave him my Word that I would not put them to Death on any Account whatsoever merely for his Sake: He bow'd and thank'd me very heartily for that Grant, which he said oblig'd him to be plainer with me on that Head: and as he said, he would not deceive me in any Thing whatever, so he would not in this especially; and therefore told me, it was his Opinion they would not serve me faithfully; and he referr'd me to the Experience I should find of it; and added, that he would be so just to me in the Beginning, as that while he begg'd me to be merciful to them, yet for my own Sake he should also beg me not to trust them.

I took the Hint, and said no more at that Time, but ordered his Irons to be taken off, and ordered him to have Leave to go to his former Cabin and to have his Chests and Things restored to him; so that he

was at full Liberty in the Ship, tho' not in any Office, or appointed to and any particular Business. A Day or two after this, we made Land, which appear'd to be the North West Part of the Island, in the Latitude of 13 Degrees 30 Minutes; and now I thought it was Time to put our Design in Execution; for I knew very well that it could not be a great Way from this Part of the Island where the Pyrates were to be heard of: So I ordered the Boat on Shore, with about 16 Men, to make Discoveries, and with them my new restored Man. I gave him no Instructions for any thing extraordinary at this Time; our Work now being only to find out where they were: The Boat came on board again at Night, for we had now stood in within two Leagues of the Shore, and brought us an Account, that there were no English or Europeans at all thereabouts, but that they were to be heard of a great Way farther: So we stood away to the North all the Night, and the next Day, the Wind being fair and the Sea smooth, and by our Reckoning we went in that about forty Leagues.

The next Evening, the same Company went on Shore again, and were shew'd by some of the Natives where the Pyrates inhabited; which in short, was about six and twenty Miles farther North still, in a River very commodious for Shipping where they had five or six European build Ships, and two or three Sloops, but they were all laid up, except two Sloops, with which they cruised sometimes a great Distance off to the North, as far as the Arabian Gulph: He

He returned with this Intelligence the same Night; and by his Direction, we stood in as close under the Shore, as we could conveniently, about six Leagues farther North; here we found a very good Road under a little Cape, which kept us perfectly undiscovered; and in the Morning before Day, my Man went on Shore again with the Boat, and keeping only four Men with him, sent the Boat on board again, agreeing on a Signal for us to send the Boat for him again when he should return.

There was a pretty high Ledge of Hills to the North of the Place where he landed, and which running West made the little Cape under the Lee of which our Ship rode at an Anchor as above. As soon as he came to the Top of those Hills he plainly discovered the Creek or Harbour where the Pirate Ships lay, and where they had form'd their Encampment on the Shore. Our Men took such proper Observations of the Situation of the Place they were in, upon the Hill, that they might not fail to find their Way back again, tho' it were in the Night; and having agreed in the Account they should give of themselves, so that they might be all found in the same Tale, they boldly went down the Hill, and came to the Edge of the Creek; the Pirates Camp being on the other Shore.

Here they fired a Gun to raise a Kind of Alarm among them, and then hanging out a white Cloth on the Top of a Pole, a Signal of Peace, they Hail'd them in English, and ask'd them if they would send a Boat and fetch them over.

The Pirates were surpriz'd at the Noise of the Piece, and came running to the Shore with all speed; but they were much surpriz'd when they heard themselves Hail'd in English. Upon the whole, they immediately sent a Boat to fetch them over, and received them with a great deal of Joy.

Our Men pretended to be overjoy'd at finding them there, told them a long Story, that they came on Shore on the West Side of the Island, where, not far off, there were two English Ships; but that the Natives quarrelling with their Men, upon some Rudeness offer'd to their Women; and they being separated from their Fellows, were oblig'd to fly, that the Natives had surrounded the rest, and they believ'd had kill'd them all; that they wandered up to the Top of the Hill, intended to make Signals to their Ship, to send them some Help; when seeing some Ships, they believed some Europeans were there, and so came down to take Shelter; and they begg'd of them a Boat to carry them round the Cape to their Comrades; unless they would give them Leave to stay with them, and do as they did, which they were willing to do.

This was all a made Story; but however, the Tale told so well, that they believed it thoroughly, and receiv'd our Men very kindly, led them up to their Camp, and gave them some Victuals.

Our Men observed they had Victuals enough, and very good, as well Beef as Mutton; that is to say, of Goats Flesh, which was excellent good; also Pork and Veal, and they were tolerable good Cooks too; for they found they had built several Furnaces and Boilers which they had

had taken out of their Ships, and dress'd a vast Quantity of Meat at a Time: But they observ'd they had no Liquor; upon which, the Mate pull'd a large Bottle of good Cordial Waters out of his Pocket, and gave it about as for it would go, and so did two others of the Men which their new Landlords took very kindly.

They spent good Part of the first Day in looking about them, seeing the Manner of the Pyrates Living there, and their Strength; and soon perceived that they were indeed in a sorry Condition every Way, except that they had Cattle and Flesh Meat sufficient. They had a good Platform of Guns indeed, and a cover'd Place pallisado'd round where they lodg'd their Ammunition. But as for Fortifications to the Landward they had none, except a double Pallisado round their Camp, and a Sort of a Bank thrown up within to fire from, and stand cover'd from the Enemies Lances, which was all they had to fear from the Natives. They had no Bread but what they made of Rice, and the Store they had of that was very small: They told our Men indeed, that they had two Ships Abroad, who they expected back every Day with a Quantity of Rice, and what else they could get; especially with some Arack, which they were to Trade for with the Arabian Merchants, or take it by Force, which should first offer.

Our Men pretended to like their Way of living mighty well, and talk'd of staying with them, if they would let them, and thus they pass'd the first Day of Conversation.

Our Men had two Tents or Huts given them to lodge in, and Hammocks hung in the Huts very agreeably, being

such I suppose as belong'd to some of their Company that were dead, or were out upon Adventure, here they slept very secure, and in the Morning walk'd about, as Strangers be suffer'd to do to look about them, but my new Manager's Eye was chiefly here upon two Things, 1st, To see if they had any Shipping for our Purpose, and 2^{dly}, To see, if he could pitch upon one Man more particular than the rest, to enter into some Confidence with, and it was not long before he found an Opportunity for both, the Manner was thus;

He was walking by himself, having ordered his other Men to straggle away, two and two, this way and that, as if they had not minded him, tho' always to keep him in Sight, I say he walk'd by himself towards that part of the Creek, where, as was said, three of the biggest Ships lay by the Wall; and when he came to the Shore right against them, he stood still looking at them very earnestly; while he was here, he observ'd a Boat put off from One of them, with four Oars and one Sitter only, who they set on shore just by him, and then put off again; the Person, who they set on shore, was it seems, One, who had been with our Men the Evening before, but having some particular Office on board one of those Ships, lay on board every Night with about 10 or 12 Men, just to watch and guard the Ship, and so came on Shore in the Morning, as is usual in Men of War lay'd up,

As soon as he saw our Man, he knew him, and spoke very familiarly to him, and seeing he was looking so earnestly at the Ship, he ask'd him, if he would go on board, our Men faintly declin'd it, as no purpose to be ask'd again, and upon just as much farther pressing as was sufficient

to satisfy him, that the Gunner, for that was his Office, was in earnest, he yielded, so the Gunner call'd back the Boat, and they went on board.

Our Men view'd the Ship very particularly, and pretended to like every Thing they saw, but after some Conversation, ask'd him this home Question, namely, why they did not go to Sea, and seek Purchase, having so many good Ships, at their Command; he shook his Head, and told him very frankly, that they were in no Condition to undertake any thing, for that they were a Crew of unresolv'd divided Rogues, that they were never two Days, of a Mind, that they had No-body to command, and therefore No-body to obey; that several Things had been offer'd, but nothing concluded, that in short they thought of nothing, but of shifting every one for themselves, as well as they could.

My Mate reply'd, he thought it had been quite otherwise, and that made him tell them last Night, that he had an Inclination to stay with them; I heard you say so, said the Gunner, and it made me smile; I thought in myself that you would be of another Mind, when you knew us a little better, for in a Word, said he, if they should go with you, for not a Man of them, that went with you, would ever come back again hither, if your Captain would take them on board, tho' the Terms were to be hang'd, when they came to England.

My Mate knew that this was my Opinion before, but he was really of

another Mind himself, till he saw things, and told he talk'd with this Gunner, and this put new Things in his Head; so he entertain'd the Gunner with a Scheme of his own, and told him, if it was so as he related it, and that he had really a Mind to come off from that Gang, he believ'd, that he could put him in a Way how to do it to his Advantage, and to take a Set of his People with him, if he could pick out some of them that might be depended upon.

The Gunner reply'd, that he could pick out a Set of very brave Fellows, good Seamen, and most of them such, as having been forc'd into the Pyrates Ships, were dragg'd into that wicked Life they had lived, not only against their Conscience, but by a meer Necessity to save their Lives, and that they would be glad at any Price to come off: The Mate ask'd him, how many such he could answer for, he told him above 100; upon this the Mate told him the Circumstances we were in, the Voyage we were upon, that we were a Letter of Mart Ship of such a Force, but that we were over mann'd and double stor'd, in hopes of getting a good Ship upon our Cruise to, man out of the other, that we had been disappointed, and had only got a Sloop or Brigantine which we bought, as before, at the Cape, that if he could persuade the Men, to sell us one of their Ships, we would pay them for it in ready Money, and perhaps entertain 100 of their Men into the Bargain.

The Gunner told him, he would propose it to them, and added in positive

fitive Terms, that he knew it would be readily accepted, and that he should take which of the three Ships I pleas'd; the Mate then desir'd, that he would lend them his Shallop to go on board our Ship, to acquaint me with it. and bring back sufficient Orders to treat; he told him, he would not only do that but, before I could be ready to go, he would propose it to the chief Men that he had his Eye upon, and would have their Consent, and that then he would go along with him on board to make a Bargain.

This was as well as our Mate could expect, and the Gunner had either so much Authority among them, or the Men were so forward to shift their Station in the World, that the Gunner came again to our Mate in less than two Hours, with an Order, sign'd by above 16. of their Officers, empowering him to sell us the Ship, which the Gunner was on board of, and to allot so many Guns, and such a Proportion of Ammunition to her, as was sufficient, and to give the Work of all their Carpenters for so many Days, as were necessary to repair her, Calk, and grave her, and put her in Condition to go to Sea.

She was a Spanish built Ship, where they had her, the Gunner said he did not know; but she was a very strong tight Ship, and a pretty good Sailor. We made her carry 32 Guns, tho' she had not been used to carry above 24.

The Gunner being thus impowered to treat with my Mate, came away in their Shallop, and brought

the said Gunner and two more of their Officers with him and eight Seamen. The Gunner and I soon made a Bargain for the Ship, which I bought for 5000 Pieces of Eight, most of it in English Goods, such as they wanted; for they were many of them almost naked of Cloaths, and as for other Things they had scarce a Pair of Stockings or Shoes among them. When our Bargain was made, and the Mate had related all the Particulars of the Conference he had with the Gunner, we came to talk of the People who were to go with us: The Gunner told us we might indeed have good Reason to suspect a Gang of Men who had made themselves infamous all over the World by so many Pyracies and wicked Actions: But if I would put so much Confidence in him, he would assure me, that as he should have the Power in his Hands to pick and chuse his Men, so he would answer Body for Body for the Fidelity of all the Men he should chuse; and that most, if not all, of them, would be such as had been taken by Force out of other Ship's or wheel'd away when they were drunk: And in a Word, he told me, there never was a Ship-load of such Penitents went to Sea together as he would bring us: When he had said so, he began to move me that I would please to give him the same Post which he held in the Ship, viz. of Gunner, which I promised him; and then he desir'd I would premit him to speak with me in private; I was not at first very free to it, but he having consented to let the Mate and Captain Merlotte be present, I yielded.

When

When all the rest were withdrawn, he told me, that having been five Years in the Pyrates Service, as he might call it and being oblig'd to do as they did, I might be sure he had some small Share in the Purchase; and however, he had come into it against his Will, yet as he had been oblig'd to go with them, he had made some Advantages; and that being resolv'd to leave them, he had a good while ago pick'd up some of the best of what he had got, to make his Escape, and begg'd I would let him deposite it with me as a Security for his Fidelity. Upon this, he order'd a Chest to be taken out of the Shallop, and brought into my great Cabin; and besides this, gave me out of his Pocket, a Bag fill'd up, the Contents of which, I shall speak of hereafter.

The Shallop return'd the next Day, and I sent back the Mate with my Long Boat and 24 Men, to go and take Possession of the Ship, and appointed my Carpenter to go and see to the Repairs that were necessary to be done to her: And some Days after, I sent Captain Merlotte with the Supra Cargo in our Sloop, to go and secure the Possession, and to cover the Retreat of any of the Men that might have a mind to come away, and might be oppos'd by the rest: And this was done at the Request of the Gunner, who foresaw there might be some Squabble about it.

They spent six Weeks and some odd Days in fitting out this Ship, occasioned by the want of a convenient Place to lay her on Shore in, which

they were oblig'd to make with a great deal of Labour, however, she was compleatly fitted up: When she was fitted, they laid in a good Store of Provisions, tho' not so well cur'd as to last a great while: One of the best Things we got a Recruit of here, was Casks, which as before we greatly wanted, and which their Coopers assisted us to trim, season, and fit up.

As to Bread, we had no Help from them; for they not only had none but what they made of Rice, but they had no sufficient Store of that, as I have hinted before.

But we had more to do yet: For when the Ship was fitted up, and our Men had the Possession of her, they were surpriz'd one Morning on a sudden, with a most horrible Tumult among the Pyrates; and had not our Brigantine been at hand, (as above) to secure the Possession, I believe they had taken the Ship from our Men again, and perhaps have come down with her and their two Sloops, and have attack'd us. The Case was thus.

*The Gunner, who was a punctual Fellow to his Word, resolv'd that none of the Men should go in the Ship, but such as he had singl'd out; and they were such, as were generally Men taken out of Merchants Ships, by Force, as before; but when he came to talk to the Men of who and who should go, and stay; truly they would all go, to a Man, there was not a Man of them would stay behind; and, in a Word, they fell out about it, to that Degree, that they came to Blows, and the Gunner was forc'd to fly for it, with a-
bout*

But 22 Men that stood to him, and six or seven were wounded in the Fray, whereof two died.

The Gunner being thus driven to his Shifts, made down to the Shore to his Boat, but the Rogues were too nimble for him, and had got to his Boat before him, and prepar'd to man her and two more, to go on board and secure the Ship: In this Distress, the Gunner, who had taken Sanctuary in the Woods at about a Mile distance, but unhappily above the Camp, so that the Platform of Guns was between him and the Ship, had no Remedy, but to send one of his Men who swam very well, to take a Compass round behind the Pyrates Camp, and come to the Water Side below the Camp and Platform, so to take the Water and swim on Board the Ship, which lay near a League below their said Camp, and gave our Men Notice of what had happen'd, to warn them to suffer none of their Men to come on Board, unless the Gunner was with them, and if possible, to send a Boat on Shore to fetch off the Gunner and his Men, who were following by the same Way, and would be at the same Place, and make a Signal to them to come for him.

Our Men had scarce received this Notice, when they saw a Boat full of Men put off from that Platform, and row down under Shore towards them: But as they resolv'd not to suffer them to come on Board, they call'd to them by a Speaking Trumpet, and told them they might go back again, for they should not come on Board, nor any other Boat, unless the Gunner was on Board.

They row'd on for all that, when our Men call'd to them again, and told them,

if they offer'd to put off, in order to come on Board, or in short, to row down Shore any farther than a little Point which our Men nam'd, and which was just a Head of them, they would fire at them: Well, they row'd on for all this, and that tho' they were past the Point; which our Men seeing, they immediately let fly a Shot, but fir'd a little a Head of them, so as not to hit the Boat, and this brought them to a stop; so they lay upon their Oars a-while, as if they were considering what to do; when our Men perceiv'd two Boats more come off from the Platform likewise, full of Men, and rowing after the first. Upon this, they call'd again to the first Boat with their Speaking Trumpet, and told them if they did not all go immediately on Shore, they would sink the Boat. They had no Remedy, seeing our Men resolv'd, and that they lay open to the Shot of the Ship; so they went on Shore accordingly, and then our Men fir'd at the empty Boat, till they split her in Pieces, and made her useless to them.

Upon this firing, our Brigantine, which lay about two Leagues off in the Mouth of a little Creek, on the South of that River, weigh'd immediately, and stood away to the opening of the Road where the Ship lay, and the Tide of Flood being still running in, they drove up towards the Ship for her Assistance, and came to an Anchor about a Cable's Length a Head of her, but within Pistol shot of the Shore, at the same Time sending 32 of her Men on Board the great Ship to reinforce the Men on Board, who were but 16 in Number.

Just at this time, the Gunner and his 21 Men, who heard the firing, and had

had quickened their Pace, tho' they had a great Compass to fetch, thro' Woods and untrod Paths, and some Luggage to carry too, were come to the Shore, and made the Signal, which our Men in the Ship observing, gave Notice to the Officer of the Brigantine to fetch them on Board, which he did very safely, by the Way, as the Officer afterwards told us, most of their Luggage consisted in Money, with which it seems every Man of them was very well furnish'd, having shared their Wealth at their first coming on Shore: As for Clothes, they had very few, and those all in Rags; and as for Linnen, they had scarce a Shirt among them all, or Linnen enough to have a white Flag for a Truce, if they had Occasion for it: In short, a Crew so rich and so Ragged, were hardly ever teen before.

The Ship was now pretty well mann'd, for the Brigantine carried the Gunner and his 21 Men on Board her; and the Tide by this time being spent, she immediately unmoor'd, and loos'd her Top Sails, which, as it happen'd had been bent to the Yard two Days before, so with the first of the Ebb she weigh'd fell down about a League farther, by which she was quite out of Reach of the Platform, and rid in the open Sea; and the Brigantine did the same.

But by this Means, they miss'd the Occasion of the rest of the Gunner's Men, who having got together to the Number of between 70 and 80, had followed him and came down to the Shore, and made the

Signals, but were not understood by our Ship, which put the poor Men to great Difficulties, for they had broken away from the rest by Force, and had been pursued half a Mile by the whole Body, and particularly at the Enterance into a very thick, woody Place, were so hard put to it, that they were oblig'd to make a desperate stand, and fire at their old Friends, which had exasperated them to the last Degree. But as the Case of these Men were desperate, they took an effectual Method for their own Security, of which I shall give a farther Account presently.

The general Body of the Pyrates were now up in Arms, and the new Ship was, as it were, in open War against it: But as they had been disappointed in their Attempt to force it, and found they were not strong enough at Sea to attack it, they sent a Flag of Truce on Board. Our Men admitted them to come to the Ship side, but as my Mate, who now had the Command, knew them to be a Gang of desperate Rogues that would attempt any thing, tho' never so rash, he order'd that none of them should come on Board the Ship, except the Officer and two more, who gave an Account that they were sent to treat with us. So we call'd them the Ambassadors.

When they came on Board, they expostulated very warmly with my new Agent the second Mate, that our Men came in the Posture, of Friends, and of Friends too in Distress, and had receiv'd Favours from them, but had abused the Kindness,

which

which had been shewn them, that they had bought a Ship of them, and had Leave and Assistance to fit her up and furnish her; but had not paid for her, or paid for what Assistance and what Provisions had been given to them. And that now to compleat all, their Men had been partially and unfairly treated, and when a certain Number of Men had been granted us, an inferior Fellow a Gunner, was set to call such and such Men out, just who he pleased, to go with us; whereas the whole Body ought to have had the appointing who they would or would not give Leave to, to go in the Ship: That when they came in a peaceable Manner to have demanded Justice, and to have treated amicably of these Things, our Men had denied them Admittance, had committed Hostilities against them, had fir'd at their Men and stav'd their Boat, and had afterwards receiv'd on Board their Deserters, all contrary to the Rules of Friendship. And in all these Cases they demanded Satisfaction.

Our new Commander was a ready Man enough, and he answer'd all their Complaints with a great deal of Gravity and Calmness: He told them, that it was true he came to them as Friends, and had received friendly Usage from them, which he had not in the least dishonoured; but that as Friends in Distress, we had never pretended to be, and really were not; for that we were neither in Danger of any Thing, or in Want of any Thing; that as to Provisions, we were strong enough, if need were, to procure ourselves Provisions in any Part of the Island, and had been several Times supplied from the Shore by

the Natives, for which we had always fully satisfied the People who furnish'd us; and that we scorn'd to be ungrateful for any favour we should have receiv'd, much less to abuse it, or them for it.

That we had paid the full Price of all the Provisions we had receiv'd, and for the Work that had been done to the Ship, that what we had bargain'd for, as the Price of the Ship, had been paid, as far as the Agreement made it due, and that what remain'd, was ready to be paid as soon as the Ship was finish'd, which was our Bargain.

That as to the People who were willing to take Service with us, and enter themselves on Board, it is true, that the Gunner and some other Men offer'd themselves to us, and we had accepted of them, and we thought it was our Part to accept or not to accept of such Men as we thought fit. As for what was among themselves, that we had nothing to do with; that if we had been publickly warn'd by them not to have entertain'd any of their Men, but with Consent of the whole Body, then indeed we should have had Reason to be cautious; otherwise, we were not in the least concern'd about it. That it is true, we refused to let their Boats come on Board us, being assur'd they came in an hostile Manner, either to take away the Men by Force, which had been enter'd in our Service, or perhaps even to seize the Ship itself; and and why else was the first Boat follow'd by two more full of Men, arm'd and prepar'd to attack us; that we not only came in a friendly Manner to them, but resolv'd to continue in Friendship with them, if they thought fit to use us as Friends; but that considering what Part of the

World

World we were in, and what their Circumstances were, they must allow us to be upon our Guard, and not put ourselves on a Condition to be used ill.

While he was talking thus with them in the Cabin, he had order'd a Can of Flip to be made, and given to the Men in the Boat, and every one a Dram of the Bottle, but would not suffer them to come on board; however one or two of them got Leave to get in at one of the Ports, and got between Decks among our Men; here they made terrible Complaints of their Condition, and and begg'd hard to be enter'd in our Service; they were full of Money, and gave 20 or 30 Pieces of Eight among our Men, and by this Present prevail'd for two Men to speak to my Mate, who appear'd as Captain to take the Boat's Crew on board; the Mate very gravely told the two Ambassadors of it, and told them, that seeing they were came with a Flag of Truce, he would not stop their Men, without their Consent but the Men being so earnest, he thought, they would do better not to oppose them; the Ambassadors, as I call them, oppos'd it however vehemently, and at last desir'd to go and talk with the Men, which was granted them readily: When they came into their Boat, their Men told them plainly, that One and all they would enter themselves with their Country Men that they had been forc'd already to turn Pyrates, and they thought, they might very justly turn honest Men again by Force, if they could not get Leave to do it peaceably; and that in short, they would go on Shore no more; that if the Ambassadors desir'd it, they would set them on Shore with the Boat, but as for themselves, they would go along with the new Captain.

When the Ambassador saw this,

they had no more to do, but to be satisfied, and so were set on Shore, where they desir'd, and their Men staid on Board.

During this Transaction, my Mate had sent a full Account to me of all that had pass'd and had desir'd me to come on board, and gave farther Directions in all that was to come; so I took my Supra Cargo and Captain Merlotte along with me, and some more of our Officers, and went to them; it was my Lot to come on board, just when those famous Ambassadors were talking with my Mate, so I heard most of what they had to say, and heard the Answer my Mate gave them, as above, which was exttemely to my Staisfaction; nor did I interrupt him, or take upon me any Authority, tho' he would very submissively have had me shewn myself, as Captain, but I bid him go on, and sat down, as not concern'd in the Affair at all.

After the Ambassadors were gone, the first thing I did, was, in the Presence of all the Company, and having before had the Opinion of those I brought with me, to tell my second Mate, how well we were all satisfy'd with his Conduct, and to declare him, Captain of the Ship, that he was in; only demanding his solemn Oath, to be under Orders of the great Ship, as Admiral; and to carry on no separate Interest from us, which he thankfully accepted, and to give him his Due, as faithfully perform'd, all the rest of our very long Voyage, and thro' all our Adventures.

It was upon my seeming Intercession, that he gave Consent to the Boat's Crew, who brought the Ambassadors, to remain in our Service, and set their Statelmen on shore; and in fine, I told him, that as far as 105 or 200 Men, he should entertain who he thought fit; thus having settl'd all things in the Ship to our Satisfaction, we went back to our great Ship the next Day:

I had not been many hours on board our Ship, but I was surprized with the firing of three Muskets from the Shore; we wondered what should be the meaning of it, knowing, that it was an unusual Thing in that Place, where we knew the Natives of the Country had no Fire Arms, so we knew not what to make of it, and therefore took no Notice of it, other than as I say, to wonder at it; about half an hour after that, we heard three Muskets more, and still not knowing any thing of the Matter, we made them no Return to the Signal; some Time after, three Muskets were fir'd again, but all was one, we took no Notice, for we knew nothing of what Return was to be made to it.

When Night came on, we observ'd two great Fires upon two several Hills, on that Part of the Shore, opposite to us, and after that three Rockets were fir'd, such as they were, but they went off ill; I suppose their Gunner was ill provided for such Things, but all signified nothing; we would have made any Return to them, that had been to be understood, but we knew nothing of any agreed Signal; however I resolv'd, that in the Morning I

would send a Boat on Shore, well mann'd, to learn if possible, what the Meaning of all this was; and accordingly in the Morning, I sent our long Boat and Shallop on Shore, with 32 Men in them both, to get Intelligence; ordering them if possible, to speak with some Body, before they went on Shore, and know how things stood; that then, if it was a Party of the Pyrates, they should by no Means, come near them, but parly at a Distance, till they knew, what the Meaning of it all was.

As soon as my Men came near the Shore, they saw plainly, that it was a Body of near 100 of the Pyrates, but seeing them so strong, they stood off, and would not come nearer, nor near enough to parly with them, upon this the Men on Shore, got one of the Islanders Canvas Boats, or rather, Boats made of Skins, which are but sorry ones at best, and put off with two Men, to manage the Sail, and one Sitter, and two Paddles for Oars, and away they came towards us, carrying a Flag of Truce, that is to say, an old white Rag; how they came to save so much Linnen among them all, was very hard to say.

Our Men could do no less, than receive their Ambassador, and a Flag of Truce gave no Shadow of Apprehension, especially considering the Figure they made, and that the Men on Shore had no other Boats to surprize or attack us with; so they lay by upon their Oars, till they came up, when they soon understood who they were, viz that they

they were the Gunner's selected Men, that they came too late, to have their Signal perceiv'd from the other Ship, which was gone out of Sight of the Place they were directed to; that they had with great Difficulty, and five Days and Nights marching, got through a woody and almost unpassable Country to come at us; that they had fetch a Circuit of near 100 Miles, to void being attack'd by their Comrades, and that they were pursued by them, with their whole Body, and therefore they begg'd to be taken on board; they said, if they should be overtaken by their Comrades, they should be all cut in Pieces, that they had broke away from them by Force, and moreover had been oblig'd at the first of their Pursuit, to face about and fire among them, by which they had kill'd six or seven of them, and wounded others, and that they had sworn, they would give them no Quarters, if they could come fairly up with them.

Our Men told them, they must be contented to remain on Shore, where they were, for some Time, for that they could do nothing, till they had been on board, and acquainted their Captain with all the Particulars, so they came back immediately to me for Orders.

As to me, I was a little uneasy at the Thoughts of taking them on board; I knew they were a Gang of Pyrates at best, and what they might do I knew not, but I sent this Message, that tho' all their Tale might be very good for ought I knew, yet that I must take so much Time, as

to send an Express to the Captain of the other Ship, to be inform'd of the Faith of it; and that if he brought a satisfactory Answer I would send for them all on board.

This was very uncomfortable News to them, for they expected to be surrounded every Hour by their Comrades, from whom they were to look for no Mercy; however seeing no Remedy, they resolv'd to march about 20 Miles farther South, and lie by in a Place near the Sea, where we agreed to send to them; concluding, that their Comrades not finding them near the Place where we lay, would not imagine, they could be gone farther that way: As they guess'd, so it prov'd, for the Pyrates came to the Shore, where they saw Tokens enough of their having been there, but concluded, that seeing they could not be found there, they were all gone on board our Ship.

The Wind proving contrary, it was no less than four Days before our Boat came back, so that the poor Men were held in great Suspence: But when they returned they brought the Gunner with them, who had selected those Men from all the rest for our new Ship; and who, when he came, gave me a long Account of them, and what Care he had taken to pick them out for our Service, delivering me also a Letter from my new Captain to the same Purpose: Upon all which concurring Circumstances, we concluded to take them on board; so we sent our Boats for them, who at twice brought them all on board, and

very

very stout honest Fellows they were.

When they had been on board some Days and refresh'd themselves, I concluded to send them all on board the new Ship; but upon Advice, I resolv'd to send 60 of my own Men join'd to 40 of these, and keep 3 of them on board my Ship; for their Number was just 74 which with the Gunner and his 21 Men, and the 16 Men who came with the worthy Ambassadors, and would not go on Shore again, made 112 Men; and as we all thought were enough for us, tho' we took in between 40 and 50 more afterwards.

We were now ready to go to Sea, and I caused the new Ship and the Brigantine to come away from the Place where they lay and join us; which they did, and then we unloaded Part of our Provisions and Ammunitions; of which, as I observ'd at first, we had taken in double Quantity; and having furnish'd the new Ship, with a Proportion of all Necessaries, we prepar'd for our Voyage.

I should here give a long Account of a second devilish Conspiracy, which my two remaining Prisoners had form'd among the Men; which was to betray the new Ship to the Pyrates: But 'tis too long a Story to put in here; nor did I make it publick among the Ship's Company: But as it was only, as it were, lain down in a Scheme, and that they had no Opportunity to put it in Practice, I thought it was better to make as little Noise of it as I could: So I order'd my new Captain for it was he

who discovered it to me, to punish them in their own Way and without taken Notice of their new Villainies, to set them on Shore and leave them to take their Fate with a Set of Rogues, who they had intended to joyn with, and worse Profession was likely, some Time or other, to bring them to the Gallows. And thus I was rid of two incorrigible Mutineers; what become of them afterwards I never heard.

We were now a little Fleet, viz. two large Ships and a Brigantine, well manned, and furnish'd with all Sorts of Necessaries for any Voyage or any Enterprize that was fit for Men in our Posture to undertake; particularly here, I made a full design of the whole Voyage, to be again openly declared to the Men, and had them ask'd, One by One, if they were willing and resolv'd to undertake it, which they all very cheartully answered in the Affirmative.

Here we had Opportunity to furnish ourselves with a vast Stock of excellent Beef, which as I said before, we cur'd with little or Salt, by drying it in the Sun; and I believe we laid in such a Store, that in all our three Vessels we had near 150 Tons of it; and it was of excellent Use to us, and serv'd us thro' the whole Voyage: There was little else to be had in this Place that was fit to be carry'd to Sea; except, that as there was plenty of Milk, some of our Men that were more dexterous than others, made several large Cheeses; nor were they far short of English Cheese, only that we were but indif-
terent

ferent Dairy-Folks : Our Men made some Butter also, and salted it to keep, but it grew rank and oily, and was of no Use to us.

It was on the 15th of December that we left this Place, a Country fruitful, populous full of Cattle, large and excellent good Beef, and very fat; and the Land able to produce all Manner of good Things; but the People wild, naked, black, barbarous, perfectly untractable, and insensible of any State of Life being better than their own.

We stood away towards the Shore of Arabia, till we pass the Line, and came into the Latitude of 19 Degrees North, and then stood away East, and E. by N. for the English Factory of Surrat, and the Coast of Malabar; not that we had any Business there, or design'd any, only that we had a Mind to take on Board a Quantity of Rice, if we could come at it; which at last we effected by a Portuguese Vessel, which we met with at Sea, bound to Goa from the Gulph of Persia. We chas'd her and brought her too indeed, as if we resolv'd to attack and take the Ship; but finding a Quantity of Rice on Board, which was what we wanted, with a Parcel of Coffee; we took all the Rice, but paid the Supra Cargo, who was a Persian or Armenian Merchant, very honestly for the whole Parcel, his full Price, and to his Satisfaction: As for the Coffee we had no Occasion for it: We put in at several Ports in the Indian Coast for fresh Water, and fresh Provisions, but came near none of the Factories, because

we had no Mind to discover ourselves; for tho' we were to sail thro' the very Center of the India Trade, yet it was perfectly without any Business among them. We met indeed on this Coast with some Pearl Fishers, who had been in the Mouth of the Arabian Gulph, and had a large Quantity of Pearl on Board. I would have traded with them for Goods, but they understood nothing but Money, and I refused to part with it: Upon which, the Fellows gave our Supra Cargo some scurvey Language, which tho' he did not well understand what they said, yet he pretended to take it as a great Affront, and threatened to make a Prize of their Barks, and Slaves of their Men; upon which, they grew very humble; and one of them, a Malabar Indian, who spoke a little English, spoke for them, that they would willingly trade with us for such Goods as we had; whereupon I produced three Bales of English Cloth, which I shew'd them, would be of good Merchandise at Gombarron in the Gulph, for that Persians made their long Vests of such Cloths.

In short, for this Cloth, and some Money, we bought a Box of choice Pearls, which the Chief of them had pick'd out from the Rest for the Portuguese Merchants at Goa; and which, when I came to London, was valued at 2200 Pound Sterling.

We were near two Months on our Voyage from Madagascar to the Coast of India, and from thence to Ceylon, where we put in, on the South West Part of the Island, to see what Provisions we could get, and to take in a large Supply of

of Water. The People here we found willing to supply us with Provisions; but withal, so sharp, imposing upon us their own Rates for every Thing; and withal, so false, that we were often provok'd to treat them very rudely. However, I gave strict Orders that they should not be hurt upon any Occasion; at least, 'till we had fill'd all our Water Casks, and taken in what fresh Provisions we could get, and especially Rice, which we valu'd very much: But they provok'd us at last beyond all Patience; for they were such Thieves when they were on Board, and such treacherous Rogues when they were on Shore, that there was no bearing it; and two Accidents fell out upon this Occasion, which fully broke the Peace between us; one was on Board, and the other on Shore, and both happen'd the same Day. The Case on Board was this; there came on Board us a small Boat in which were 11 Men and three Boys, to sell us Roots, Yams, Mangoes, and such Stuff as it was frequent for them to do every Day; but this Boat having more Goods of that Kind than usual, they were longer than ordinary making their Market: While they were thus Chaffering on Board, one of them having wandered about the Ship, and pretending to like every Thing he saw, and being gotten between Decks, was taken stealing a Pair of Shoes, which belonged to one of the Seamen; the Fellow being stop't for his Theft appear'd angry, rais'd a hideous screaming Noise to alarm his Fellows; and at the same Time, having stolen a long Pair of Cissars, pull'd them out, and stabb'd the Man that had laid hold of him into the Shoulder, and was going to double his Blow, when the poor Fellow that had been wounded, having struck up his Heels and fallen up-

on him, had kill'd him, if I had not call'd to take him off, and bring the Thief to me.

Upon this Order, they took up the Barbarian, and brought him up with the Shoes and Cissars that he had stolen, and as the Fact was plain, and need no Witnesses, I caus'd all the rest of them to be brought up also; and as well as we could, made them understand what he had done. They made pitiful Signs of Fear, lest they should all be punished for his Crime, and particularly when they saw the Man, who he had wounded brought in; then they expected nothing but Death and they made a sad Lamentation and Howling, as if they were all to die immediately. It was not without a great deal of Difficulty that I found Ways to satisfy them, that No-body was to be punish'd but the Man that had committed the Fact; and then I caus'd him to be brought to the Geers, with a Halter about his Neck, and he soundly whipp'd; and indeed our People did scourge him severely from Head to Foot; and I believe, if I had not run myself to put an End to it, they had whipp'd him to Death.

When this Execution was over, they put him into their Boat and let them all go on Shore: But no sooner were they on Shore, but they rais'd a terrible Hubbub among all the Villages and Towns near them, and they were not a few, the Country being very Populous; and a vast Multitude came down to the Shore, staring at us, and making confused ugly Noises, and Abundance of Arrows they shot at the Ship, but we rode too far from the Shore of them to do us any Hurt.

While

While this was doing, another Fray happen'd on Shore, where two of our Men Chaffering with an Islander and his Wife for some Fowls, they took his Money, or else it was he was to give, and gave him Part of the Fowls, but they pretended the Woman should go and fetch the rest, while the Woman was gone, three or four more of the same sort came to the Man that was left, and talking a while together, seeing they were so many, and our Men but two, they began to take hold of the Fowls they had sold, and would take them away again; at which, one of our Men stepp'd up to the Fellow that had taken them up, and went to lay hold of the Fowls and the Money too. The Seamen was so enrag'd to be serv'd so, that he took up his Piece, for they had both Fire Arms with them, and fir'd immediately after him, and aim'd his Shot so luckily, that tho' the Fellow flew like the Wind, he shot him thro' the Head, and he dropp'd down dead upon the Spot.

The rest of them, tho' terribly frightened, yet seeing our Men were but two, and the Noise bringing 20 or 30 more immediately to them, attack'd our Men with their Lances, and Bows and Arrows; and in a Moment, there was a pitch'd Battle of two Men against 20 or 30, and their Number increasing too.

In short, our Men spent their Shot freely among them as long as it lasted, and kill'd six or seven besides wounding 10 or 11 more; and this cool'd their Courage, and they seem'd to give over the Battle; and

our Men, whose Ammunition was almost spent, began to think of retreating to their Boat, which was near a Mile off, for they were very unhappily gotten from their Boat so far up the Country.

They made their Retreat pretty well for about half the Way, when, on a sudden, they saw they were not pursu'd only. but surrounded, and that some of their Enemies were before them. This made them double their Pace, and seeing no Remedy, they resolv'd to break thro' those that were before them, who were about 11 or 12. Accordingly, as soon as they came within Pistol shot of them one of our Men having, for want of Shot, put almost a Handful of Gravel and small Stones into his Piece, and fir'd among them, and the Gravel and Stones scattering, wounded almost all of them, for they being naked from the Waist upwards, the least grain of Sand scratch'd and hurt them, and made them bleed if it did but touch them.

Being thus compleatly scar'd, and indeed more afraid than hurt, they all ran away except two who were really wounded with the Shot or Stones, and lay upon the Ground: Our Men let them lye, and made the best of their Way to their Boat; where, at last, they got safe, but with 500 of the People at their Heels; the Fellows did not stay to fire from the Boat but put off with all the Speed they could, for fear of their poison'd Arrows, and the Country People pour'd so many of their Arrows into the Boat after them, and aim'd them also so true, that two of our

our Men were hurt with them ; but whether they were poison'd or no, our Surgeons cur'd them both.

We had enough of Ceylon, and having no Business to make such a Kind of War as this must have been, in which we might have lost, but could get nothing, we weigh'd and stood away to the East ; what became of the Fellow that was lash'd, we know not, but as he had but little Flesh left on his Back, which was mangl'd, and torn with our whipping him, and we suppose, they are but indifferent Surgeons, our People said the Fellow could not live : And the Reason they gave for it, was because they did not pickle him : For tho' Pickling, that is to say, throwing Salt and Vinegar on the Back after the Whipping, be cruel enough, as to the Pain it is to the Patient, yet it is certainly the Way to prevent Mortification, and cause it to heal again with the more Ease.

We stood away from Ceylon E. S. E. cross the great Bay of Bengal, leaving all the Coast of Coromandel, and standing directly for Anchin, on the North Point of the great Island of Sumatra, and in the Latitude of six Degrees 31 Minutes North.

Here we spread our French Colours, and coming to an Anchor, suffer'd none of our Men to go on Shore but Captain Merlotte and his French Men ; and having nothing to do there, or any were else in the Indian Seas, but to take in Provisions and fresh Water, we staid but five Days ; in that Time, we supply'd ourselves with what the Place would afford ;

and pretended to be bound for China, we went on the South thro' the Straights of Malacca, between the Island Sumatra, and the Main or Isthmus of Malacca.

We had here a very difficult passage, tho' we took two Pilots on board at Ancein, who pretended to know the Straights perfectly well ; twice we were in very great Danger of being lost, and once our Madagascar Ship was so entangled among the Rocks and Currents, that we gave her up for lost, and twice she struck upon the Rocks, but she did but touch, and went clear.

We went several Times on Shore among the Malaysians, as well on the Shore of Malacca itself, as on the Side of Sumatra : They are a fierce, cruel, treacherous, and merciless Crew of humane Devils as any I have met with on the Face of the whole Earth ; and we had some Skirmishes with them, but not of any Consequence : We made no Stay any where in this Straight, but just for fresh Water, and what other fresh Provisions we could get, such as Roots, Greens, Hogs and Fowls, of which they have Plenty and a great Variety : But nothing to be had but for ready Money ; which our Men took so unkindly, and especially their offering two or three Times to cheat them, and once to murder them ; that after that, they made no Scruple to go on Shore a hundred or more at a Time, and plunder and burn what they could not carry off ; till at last we began to be such a Terror

to them, that they fled from us wherever we came.

On the 5th of March we made the Southermost Point of the Isthmus of Malucca; and the Island, and Straights of Sincapore, famous for its being the great Outlet into the Chinese Seas, and lying in the Latitude of one Degree fifteen Minutes North Latitude.

We had good Weather thro' these Streights, which was very much to our Comfort; the different Currents, and Number of little Islands, making it otherwise very dangerous, especially to Strangers: We got by very good Luck, a Dutch Pilot to carry us thro' this Streight, who was a very useful skilful Fellow, but withal so very impertinent and inquisitive, that we knew not what to say to him nor do with him: At last he grew saucy and insolent, and told our chief Mate, that he did not know but we might be Pyrates to his Countrymen the Dutch; and if we would not tell him who we were, and whither we were a bound, he would not Pilot us any farther.

This I thought very insolent, to a Degree beyond what was sufferable; and I bid the Boatswain put a Halter about the Fellow's Neck, and tell him, that the Moment he omitted to direct the Steerage as a Pilot, or the Moment the Ship came to any Misfortune, or struck upon any Rock, he should be truss'd up. The Boatswain a rugged Fellow, provides himself with a Halter, and coming up to the Pilot, ask'd him, What it was he wanted to

be satisfied in? The Pilot said, he desir'd to have a true Account whither we were going: Why, says the Boatswain, we are a going to the Devil, and I shall send you before to tell him we are a coming; and with that, he pull'd the Halter out of his Pocket, and put it over his Head; and taking the other End of it in his Hand, Come, says the Boatswain, come along with me; do you think we can't go thro' the Streight of Sincapore without your Help; I warrant you, says he, we will do without you.

By this Time, you may suppose, the Dutch Man to be in a mortal Fright, and halfchoak'd too with being dragg'd by the Throat with the Halter, and full heartily he begg'd for his Life: At Length, the Boatswain, who had pull'd him along a great Way, stopp'd, and the Dutch Man fell down on his Knees; but the Boatswain said, he had the Captain's Order to hang him, and hang him he would, unless the Captain recall'd his Orders; but that he would stay so long, if any Body would go up to the Captain, and tell him what the Dutch Man said and bring back a Answer.

I had no Design to hang the poor Fellow, you may be sure, and the Boatswain knew that well enough: However, I was resolv'd to humble him effectually, so I send back two Men to the Boatswain; the first was to tell the Boatswain aloud, that Captain was resolv'd to have the Fellow hang'd, for having been so impudent to threaten to run the Ship a-Ground: But then the second, who was to stay a little behind, was to call out, as if he came since the first from me, and that I had been

been prevail'd with to pardon him, on his Promises of better Behaviour: This was all acted to the Life; for the first Messenger call'd aloud to the Boatswain, that the Captain said he would have the Dutch Man barg'd for a Warning to all Pilots, and to teach them not to insult Men when they are in Difficulties, as the Midwives do a Whore in Travail, and won't deliver them till they confess who is the Father.

The Boatswain had the End of the Halter in his Hand all the while; I told you so, says he, before, come, come along Mynbeer, says he, I shall quickly do your Work, and put you out of your Pain; and then he dragg'd the poor Fellow along the Main-mast: By this Time the second Messenger came in and deliver'd his Part of the Errand, and so the poor Dutch Man was put out of his Fright, and they gave him a Dram to restore him a little, and he did his Work very honestly afterwards.

And now we were got loose again, being in the open Seas, which was what we were impatient for before. We had now a long run over that Part which we call the Sea of Borneo, and the upper Part of the Indian Arches, call'd so for its being full of Islands, like the Archipelago of the Levant. It was a long Run, but as we were to the North of the Islands, we had the more Sea-room; so we steer'd East half a Point one Way or other for the Manilla's or Phillipine Islands; which was the true Design of our Voyage, and, perhaps, we were the first Ship that ever came to those Islands frighted from Europe since the Portuguese lost their Footing there.

We put in on the North Coast of Bor-

neo for fresh Water, and were civilly used by the Inhabitants of the Place, who brought us Roots, and Fruits of several Kinds, and some Goats, which we were glad of. We paid them in Trifles; such as Knives, Cissars, Toys, and several Sorts of wrought Iron, Hatchets, Hammers, Glass-work, Looking-glasses, Drinking-glasses, and the like. From hence we went away, as I say, for the Phillipine Islands. We saw several Islands in our Way, but made no stop except for Water, and arriv'd at Manilla the 22d of May, all our Vessels in very good Condition, our Men healthy, and our Ship sound; having met with very few contrary Winds, and not one Storm in the whole Voyage from Madagascar, having been 17 Months and two Days on the Voyage from England.

When we came hither, we saluted the Spanish Flag, and came to an Anchor, carrying French Colours. Captain Merlotte, who now acted as Commander, sends his Boat on Shore the next Day to the Governor with a Letter in French very respectful; and telling the Governor, that having the King of France's Commission, and being come into those Seas, he hop'd, that for the Friendship which was between their Most Christian and Catholick Majesties, he should be allow'd the Freedom of Commerce, and the Use of the Port; the like having been granted to his Most Christian Majesties Subjects in all the Ports of New Spain, as well in the Southern as in the Northern Seas.

The Spanish Governor return'd a very civil and obliging Answer, and immediately granted us to buy what Provision we pleased for our Supply, or any

Thing

Thing else for our Use; but answered, that as for allowing any Exchange of Merchandizes, or giving Leave for European Goods to be brought on Shore there, that he was not impower'd to grant.

We made as if this Answer was satisfactory enough to us; the next Morning, Captain Merlotte sent his Boat on Shore with all French Sailors, and a Midshipman French, with a handsome Present to the Governor; consisting of some Bottles of French Wine, some Brandy, two Pieces of fine Holland, two Pieces of English black Bays, one Piece of fine French Drugget, and five Yards of Scarlet Woollen Cloth.

This was too considerable a Present for a Spaniard to refuse; and yet these were all European Goods, which he seem'd not to allow to come on Shore. The Governor let the Captain know, that he accepted his Present; and the Men who brought it, were very handsomely entertain'd by the Governor's Order, and had every one a small Piece of Gold; and the Officer who went at their Head, had five Pieces of Gold given him: What Coin it was I could not tell, but I think it was a Japan Coin, and the Value something less than a Pistole.

The next Day the Governor sent a Gentleman with a large Boat, and in it a Present to our Captain; containing two Cows, 10 Sheep or Goats rather, for they were between both; a vast Number of Fowls of several Sorts, and 12 great Boxes, of Sweetmeats and Conserves; which were

indeed very valuable; and invited the Captain and any of his Attendance on Shore, offering to send Hostages on Board for our safe Return; and concluded with his Word of Honour for our Safety, and free going back to our Ships.

The Captain received the Present with very great respect, and indeed it was a very handsome Present; for at the same Time a Boat was sent to both the other Ships with Provisions and Sweetmeats, in Proportion to the Bigness of the Vessel. Our Captain caused the Gentleman who came with the Presents, to have a fine Piece of Crimson English Cloth given him sufficient to make a Waistcoat and Breeches of their Fashion, with a very good Hat, two Pair of Silk Stockings, and two Pair of Gloves; and all his People had a Piece of Drugget given them sufficient to make them the like Suit of Cloaths; the Persons who went to the other Ship, and to the Brigantine, had Presents in Proportion.

This, in short, was neither more or less than Trading and Bartering, tho' for the Grimace of it, we were, in a Manner, deny'd. The next Day the Captain went on Shore to visit the Governor, and with him several of our Officers, and the Captain of the Madagascar Ship, formerly my second Mate, and the Captain of the Brigantine. I did not go myself for that Time, nor the Supra Cargo, because whatever might happen, I would be reserv'd on Board; besides I did not Care to appear in this Part of the Work.

The Captain went on Shore like a Captain, attended with his two Trumpeters, and the Ship firing 11 Guns at his going off. The Governor receiv'd him like himself, with prodigious State and Formality; sending five Gentlemen and a Guard of Soldiers to receive them at their Landing, and to conduct them to his Palace: When they came there, they were entertain'd with the utmost Profusion, and wonderful Magnificence, after the Spanish Manner; and they all had the Honour to dine with his Excellency, that is to say all the Officers: At the same Time the Men were entertain'd very handsomely in another House, and had very good Cheer: But it was observ'd, that they had very little Wine, except such as we had sent them, which the Governor excused; his Store which he had yearly from New Spain, being spent; which Deficiency we supply'd the next Day, and sent him a Quarter Cask of very good Canary, and a half Hogshead of Madeira; which was a Present so acceptable, that in short, after this, we might do just as we pleas'd with him, and all his Men.

While they were thus conversing together, after Dinner, Captain Merlotte was made to understand, that tho' the Governor could not admit an open avow'd Trade, yet that the Merchants would not be forbid coming on Board our Ship, and Trading with us in such Manner as we should be very well satisfy'd with; after which, we should be at no Hazard of getting the Goods we should sell, put on Shore; and we had an Experiment of this made in a few Days as follows.

When Captain Merlotte took his Leave of the Governor he invited his Excellence to come on board our Ship, with such of his Attendances as he pleas'd to bring with him and in like Manner offer'd Hostages for his Return; the Governor accepted the Invitation, and with the same Generosity said, he would take his Parole of Honour given, as he was the King of France's Captain, and in the Name of his Most Christian Majesty and would come on board.

The Governor did not come to the Shore Side with them, but stood in the Window of the Palace, and gave them his Hat and Leg at their going into their Boats, and made a Signal to the Platform, to fire 11 Guns at their Boats putting off.

These were unusual and unexpected Honours to us, who, but for this Stratagem of the French Commission, had been declared Enemies: It was suggested to me here, that I might with great Ease surprize the whole Island, nay all the Islands, the Governor putting such Confidence in us, that we might go on Shore in the very Fort unsuspected: But tho' it was true, and that we did play them a Trick at the Riode la Plato, I could not bear the Thoughts of it here; besides I had quite another Game to play, which also was more advantageous to us and our Voyage, than an Enterprize of so much Treachery could be to England, which also, we might not be able to support from England, before the Spaniards might beat us out again from Acapulco, and then we might pass our Time ill enough

Upon

Upon the whole I resolv'd to keep every Punctilio with the Governor very justly, and we found our Account in it presently.

About three Days afterwards we had Notice, that the Governor would make us a Visit, and we prepared to entertain his Excellence with as much State as possible; by the way we had private Notice, that the Governor would bring with him some Merchants, who perhaps might lay out some Money and buy some of our Cargo; nor was it without a secret Intimation; that even the Governor himself was concern'd in the Market that should be made.

Upon this Intelligence, our Supra Cargo caused several Bales of English & French Goods to be brought up & open'd, and laid so in the Steerage and upon the Quarter Deck of the Ship, that the Governor and his Attendants should see them of course as they pass'd by.

When the Boats came off from the Shore, which we knew by their Fort firing 11 Guns as before, our Ship appear'd as fine as we could make her, having the French Flag at the Main Top as Admiral, and Streamers and Penance at the Yard Arm, waste Cloths out, and a very fine Awning over the Quarter Deck. When his Excellency enter'd the Ship, we fir'd one and twenty Guns, the Madagascar Ship fir'd the like Number, and the Brigantine fifteen having loaded her Guns nimble enough to fire twice.

As the Governor's Entertainment to

us, was more Meat than Liquor, so we gave him more Liquor than Meat; for as we had several Sorts of very good Wines on board, we spar'd nothing to let him see, he was very welcome After Dinner, we brought a large Bowl of Punch upon the Table, which was a Liquor he did not understand at all: However to do him justice, he drank very moderately, and so did most of those that were with him. As to the Men that belong'd to his Retinue, I mean Servants and Attendants and the Crews of the Boats, we made some of them drunk enough.

While this was doing, we found two Gentlemen of the Governor's Company, took Occasion to leave the rest and walk about the Ship, and in doing this, they seem'd as it were by chance to cast their Eyes, upon our Bales of Cloath and Stuffs, Bays, Linnen, Silks, &c. and our Supra-Cargo and they began to make Bargains apace, for he found they had not only Money enough, but had abundance of other Things, which we where as willing to take as Money, and of which they had brought Speciments with them; as particularly Spices, such as Cloves and Nutmegs, China Ware, Tea, Japan'd Ware, wrought Silks, raw Silk, and the like.

However our Supra Cargo dealt with them at present for nothing but ready Money, and they paid all in Gold; the Price he made here, was to us indeed extravagant, tho' to them moderate, seeing they had been us'd to buy these Goods from the Acapulco Ships, which came in yearly, from whom, to be sure, they bought dear enough. They bought as many Goods at this Time, as they paid the value of 15000 Pieces of Eight for, but all in Gold by Weight.

As

As for carrying them, on Shore, the Governor being with them, no Officer had any Thing to say to them; it seems, they were carry'd on Shore as Presents, made by us to the Governor and his Retinue.

The next Day three Spanish Merchants came on board us, early in the Morning before it was Light, and desir'd to see the Supra Cargo; they brought with them a Box of Diamonds and some Pearl, and a great Quantity of Gold, and to work they went with our Cargo, and I thought once, they would have bought the whole Ships Loading; but they contented themselves to buy about the Value of 22000 Pieces of Eight, which, suppose, might cost in England, one sixth Part of the Money, or hardly so much. We had some Difficulty about the Diamonds, because we did not understand them very much, but our Supra Cargo ventur'd upon them at 8000 Pieces of Eight, and took the rest in Gold: They desir'd to stay on Board till the next Night, when soon after it was Dark, a small Sloop came on Board, and in took all their Goods, and as we were told, carry'd them away to some other Island.

The same Day and before these Merchants were gone, came a large Shallop on Board with a square Sail, towing after her a great heavy Boat, which had a Deck, but seem'd to have been a large Ship's long Boat, built into a Kind of Yacht, but ill mast'd, and sail'd heavily. In these two Boats they brought seven Ton of Cloves in Matts, some Chests of China Ware, some Pieces of China Silks, of several Sorts and a great Sum of Money also.

In short, they sold so cheap and bought so dear, that our Supra Cargo declar'd, he

would sell the whole Cargo for Goods, if they would bring them, for by his Calculation, he had dispos'd of as many Goods as he received the Value of 100,000 Pieces of Eight for, all which by his Accounts did not amount to, first Cost, above, 3000l. Sterling in England. Our Ship was now an open Fair, for two or three Days after came the Vessel back, which went away in the Night, and with them a Chinese Jonque, and seven or eight Chinese or Japanners; strange, ugly, ill looking Fellows they were, but brought a Spaniard to be their Interpreter, and they came to Trade also, bringing with them 70 great Chests of China Ware, exceeding fine, 12 Chests of China Silks of several Sorts, and some lacquer'd Cabinets very fine. We dealt with them for all those, for our Supra Cargo swept all clean, and took every Thing they brought. But they were more difficult in the Goods for as for Bays, and Druggets, and such Goods, they would not meddle with them; but our fine Cloths and some Bales of Linnen they bought very freely. So we unloaded their Vessel, and put our Goods on Board; we took a good Sum of Money of them besides, but whither they went we knew not, for they both come and went in the Night too, as the other did.

This Trade held a good while, and we found, that our Costomer scame more from other Islands, then from the Island where the Governor resided, the Reason of which, as we understood afterwards, was, because as the Governor had not openly granted a Freedom of Commerce, but privately wink'd at it, so they were not willing to carry it on openly before his Face, or as we say under his Nose, whereas in other Islands, they

they could convey their Goods on Shore with very little Hazard, agreeing with the Customhouse Officer for a small Matter.

These Boats came and went thus several Times, till in short we had dispos'd almost of the whole Cargo; and now our Men began to be convinc'd, that we had laid out our Voyage very right for never was Cargo better sold; and as we resolv'd to pursue our Voyage for New Spain, we had taken in a Cargo very proper to sell there, and so perhaps to double the Advantage we had already made.

In the mean Time, all our Hands were at Work to store ourselves anew, with such Provisions, as could be had here for so long a Run, as we knew we were to have next, namely, over the vast Pacifick Ocean or South Sea, a Voyage were we might expect to see no Land for four Months except we touch'd at the Ladroons, as it might happen; and our greatest Anxiety was for the Want of Water, which our whole Ship could scarce be able to stow sufficient for our Use, and if they could, our Want of Casks was still as bad as the Want of Water for we really knew not what to put Water in when we had it.

The Spaniards had help'd us to some Casks but not many, those that they could spare were but small, and at last we were oblig'd to make Use of about 200 large earthen Jars, which were of singular Use to us. We got a large Quantity of good Rice here, which we bought of a

Chinese Merchant who came here with a large China Vessel to trade, and who bought of us also several of our European Goods.

Just as we were ready to sail, a Boat came from the Town of Marilla, and brought a new Merchant, who wanted more English Goods, but we had but few left; he brought with him 30 Chests of Callicoes, Mullins, wrought Silks, some of them admirable fine indeed, with 15 Bales of Romals, and 12 Tun of Nutmegs. We sold them what Goods we had left, and gave them Money for the rest, but had them at a Price so cheap, as was sufficient to let us know, that it was always well worth while, for Ships to trade from Europe to the East Indies; from whence they are sure to make five or six of one. Had more of these Merchants came on Board, we were resolv'd to have lay'd out all the Gold, and Silver we had on Board, which, I assure you, was a very considerable Quantity.

The last Merchant, who came on Board us, was a Spaniard, but I found, that he spoke very good French, and some English, that he had been in England some Years ago, and understood English Woollen Manufactures very well; he told me, they had these Goods all from Acapulco, but that they were then excessive dear, he had considerable Dealings with the Chinese, and some with the Coast of Coromandel, and Bengale, and kept a Vessel or two of his own to go to Bengal, which generally went twice a Year.

I found, he had great Business in New Spain, and that he generally had one of the Acapulco Ships chiefly confin'd to him; so that he was full of all such Goods, as those Ships generally carry'd away from the Manilla's, and had we traded with him sooner, we had had more Callicoes and Mullins, than we now had: However we were exceedingly well stor'd with Goods of all Sorts, suitable for a Market in Peru, whither I resolv'd to go.

We continued chaffering after this Manner about nine Weeks, during which Time, we careen'd our Ships, clean'd their Bottom, rummag'd our Gold, and repack'd some of our Provisions; endeavouring as much as possible, to keep all our Men as fully employ'd as we could, to preserve them in Health, and yet not to overwork them, considering the Heat of the Climate.

Some Time before we were ready to sail, I call'd all the Warrant Officers together, and told them, that as we were come to a Country, where Abundance of small Things were to be bought, and going to a Country, where we might possibly have Room to sell them again, to Advantage, I would advance to every Officer 100 Dollars, upon Account of their Pay, they might lay it out to their Advantage here, and dispose it again on the Coast of New Spain, this was very acceptable to them, and they acknowledged it; and here, besides this by the Consent of all our Superior Officers, I gave a Large's or Bounty of five Dollars a Man, to all our Fore-

mast Men; most of which, I believe, they laid out in Arrack and Sugar, to cheer them up in the rest of the Voyage, which they all knew would be long enough.

We went away from Marcilla in the Island of Luzon or Luconia the 15th of the Month of August, and in the Year 1714, and sailing a while to the Southward, pass'd the Straits between that Island, and Mindanao, another of the Phillipines, where we met with little extraordinary, except extraordinary Lightning and Thunders such as we never heard or saw before, tho' it seems, 'tis very familiar in that Climate; till about 16 Days sailing, we saw the Isle of Guant, one of the Ladrones, or Isle of Thieves, for so much the Word imports; here we came to an Anchor September 3. under the Lee of a steep Shore, on the North Side of the Isle of Guant; but, as we wanted no Trade here, we did not at first enquire after the chief Port, or Spanish Governor, or any Thing of that Kind; but we chang'd our Situation the next Day, and went thro' the Passage, to the East Side of the Island, and came to an Anchor off of the Town.

The People came off, and brought us Hogs, and Fowls, and several Sorts of Roots, and Greens, Things, which we were very glad of, and which we bought the more of, because we always found, that such Things were good to keep the Men from the Scurvy, and even to cure them of it, if they had it; we took in fresh Water here also, tho' it was with much Difficulty, the Water lying half a Mile from the Shore.

When

When I parted from Manilla, and was getting thro' the Strait between the Island Lucon, and that of Mindanao, I had some thoughts of steering away North, to try, what Land we might meet with to the North East of the Philipines; and with Intent to have endeavour'd to make up in the Latitude of 50 or 60 Degrees, and have come about again to the South, between the Island of California, and the main Land of America; in which Courte; I did not question, meeting with extraordinary new Discoveries, and perhaps such as the Age might not expect to hear of relating to the Northern World, and the Possibility of a Passage out of those Seas, East or West, both which, I doubt not, would be found, if they were search'd after this Way; and which, for ought I know, remain undiscover'd for want of only of an Attempt being made by those Seas, where it would be easy to stand, whether the Tartarian Seas are navigable or not; and whether Nova Zembla be an Island, or joyn'd to the Main? Whether the Inlets of Hudson's Bay have any opening into the West Sea, and whether the vast Lakes, from whence the great River of Canada is said to flow, have any Communication this Way or not,

But tho' these were valuable Discoveries, yet when I begin to cast up the Account in a more serious Manner, they appear'd to have no Relation to, or Coherence with our intended Voyage, or with the Design of our Employers, which we were to consider in the first Place; for tho' it is true, that we were encourag'd to make all such Kinds of useful Discoveries as might tend to the Advantage of

Trade, and the Improvement of Geographical Knowledge and Experience; yet it was all to be so directed, as to be subservant to the Profits and Advantages of a trading and cruising Voyage.

It is true, that these Northern Discoveries might be inimitably fine, and most glorious Things to the British Nation, and infinitely for the future Advantage of Commerce in general: Yet, as I have said it is evident, that they tended directly to destroy the Voyage, either as to trading, or to cruising, and might perhaps end in our own Destruction also; for Example; first of all, if adventuring in the Northern Seas, we should, by our Industry, make out the Discovery, and find a Passage, either East or West; we must follow the Discovery so, as to venture quite thro', or else we could not be sure, that it was really a Discovery; for these Passages would not be like doubling Cape de Bon Esperance, on the Point of Africa; or going round Cape Horn, the Southermost Point of America, either which were compass'd in a few Days, and then immediately gave an opening into the Indian or Southern Oceans, where good Weather and certain Refreshment were to be had.

Whereas, for the Discovery in the North, after having pass'd the Northernmost Land of Grand Tartary, in the Latitude of 74, even to 80 Degrees, and perhaps to the very North Pole: There must be a Run West, beyond the most Northernly Point of Nova Zembla, and on again W. S W. about the North Kyn and North Cape about 600 Leagues, before we could come to have any Relief of the Climate after that, 160 Leagues more, and even to Shetland and the North of Scotland, before we could meet with any

any Relief of Provisions, which, after the Length we must have run, from the Latitude of three Degrees and an half, where we now were at the Phillipine Islands, to 74 Degrees North, being near 5000 Miles, would be impossible to be done; unless we were sure to victual, and furnish ourselves again, with Provisions, and Water by the Way and that in several Places.

As to the other Passage East towards the Continent of America, we had this Uncertainty also; namely, that it was not yet discover'd, whether the Land of California was an Island, or a Continent, and if it should prove the latter, so as that we should be oblig'd to come back to the West, and not be able to find an Opening, between California and the Land of North America, so as to come away to the Coast of Mexico, to Accapulco, and so into the South Sea, and at the same Time should not find a Passage thro' Hudson's Bay, &c. into the North Sea, and so to Europe, we should not only spoil the Voyage that Way also, but should infallibly perish by the Severity of the Season, and Want of Provisions.

All these Things argu'd against any Attempt that Way; whereas on the other Hand, for Southern Discoveries we had this particular Encouragement; that whatever Disappointment we might meet with, in the Search after unknown Countries, yet we were sure of an open Sea behind us; and that whenever we thought fit, to run South beyond the Tropick, we should find innumerable Islands, where we might get Water, and some Sort of Provisions, or Come back into a favourable Climate, and have the Benefit of the Trade Winds, to car-

ry us either backward or forward, as the Season should happen to guide us.

Last of all, we had this Assurance, that the Danger of the Seas excepted, we were sure of an Outlet, before us, if we went forward, or behind us, if we were forc'd back. and having a rich Cargo, if we were to do nothing but go home, we should be able to give our Employers such an Account of ourselves, as that they would be very far from being Losers by the Voyage; but that if we reach'd safe to the Coast of New Spain and met with an open Commerce there, as we expected, we should perhaps make the most prosperous Voyage, that ever was made round the Globe before.

These Considerations put an End to all my Thoughts of going Northward; some of our secret Council for by the Way, we consulted our Foremast Men no more, but had a secret Council among ourselves, the Resolutions of which we solemnly engag'd not to disclose: Some of these, I say, were for steering the usual Course, from the Phillipines to New Spain, viz. keeping in the Latitude of 11 or 13 Degrees North of the Line, and so making directly for California; in which Latitude they propos'd, that we might perhaps, be cruising there about, meet with the Manilla Ships, going from New Spain to Manilla, which we might take as a Prize, and then stand directly for the Coast of Peru.

But I oppos'd this; principally, because it would effectually overthrow all my mediated Discoveries to the Southward; and secondly, because I had observ'd that on the North of the Line, there are no Islands to be met with, in all the long Run, of near 2000 Leagues;

Leagues, from Guam one of the Ladrões, to the Land of Califorma, and that we did not find, we were able to subsist during so long a Run, especially for want of Water; whereas on the South of the Line, as well within the Tropick as without, we were sure to meet with Islands innumerable, and that even all the Way; so that we were sure of frequent Relief of fresh Water, of Plants, Fowl, and Fish, if not of Bread and Flesh, almost all the Way.

This was a main Consideration to our Men, and so we soon resolv'd to take the Southern Course; yet, as I said, we stood away for the Ladrões first; these are a Cluster of Islands, which lie in about 11 to 13 Degrees North Latitude, North East from the Moluccoes, or Spice Islands, and E. and by N. from that Part of the Phillipines where we were and at the Distance of about 400 Leagues, and all the Ships, which go or come between the Phillipines and New Spain, touch at them, for the Convenience of Provisions, Water, &c. those, that go to Spain, put in there, in Order to recruit and furnish for, and those that come from Spain, to relieve themselves after so long a Run as that of 6000 Miles, for so much it was at least from Guam to Acapulco; on these Accounts, and with these Reasonings, we came to the Isles of the Ladrões.

During our Run between the Phillipine and Ladrone Islands, we liv'd wholly upon our fresh Provisions, of which we laid in a great Stock at Manilla, such as Hogs,

Fowls, Calves, and six or seven Cows, all alive, so that our English Beef and Pork, which lay well stor'd, was not touch'd for a long Time.

At the Ladrões we recruited, and particularly took on Board, as well alive as pickl'd up, near 200 Hogs, with a vast Store of Roots, and such Things as are their usual Food in that Country; we took in also above 3000 Cocoa Nuts and Cabbages; Yams, Potatoes, and other Roots for our own Use, and in particular we got a large Quantity of Maiz, or Indian Wheat for Bread, and some Rice.

We stor'd ourselves likewise with Oranges and Lemons, and buying a great Quantity of very good Limes, we made three or four Hogsheads of very good Lime Juice; which was a great Relief to our Men in the hot Season, to mix with their Water; as for making Punch, we had some Arrack and some Sugar, but neither of them in any Quantity, so as to have much Punch made afore the Mast.

We were 18 Days on our Passage from the Streight of Mindanao to Guam, and stay'd six Days at Guam, furnishing ourselves with Provisions, appearing all this while with French Colours, and Captain Merlotte as Commander: However, we made no great Ceremony here with the Spanish Governor, as I have said already, only that Captain Merlotte, after we had been here two Days, sent a Letter to him by a French Officer, who shewing his Commission from the King of France; the Governor presently gave us Product, as we

A New Voyage Round the World.

we call it, and Leave to buy what Provisions we wanted: In Compliment for this Civility, we sent the Governor a small Present of fine Scarlet Camblet, and to Pieces of Bays; and he made a very handsome Return, in such Refreshments as he thought we most wanted.

There was another Reason for our keeping in this Latitude till we came to the Ladrões; namely, that all the Southern Side of that Part of the Way between the Phillipines and the Ladrões, is so full of Islands, that unless we had very good Pilots, it would have been very hazardous; and add to this, that beyond these Islands South, is no Passage; the Land, which they call Nova Guiney, lying away East and E. S. E. farther than has yet been discover'd; so that it is not yet known, whether that Country be an Island or the Continent.

Having for all these Reasons gone to the Ladrões, and being sufficiently satisfied in our Reasons, for going away from thence to the Southward, and having stor'd ourselves as above, with whatever those Islands produc'd, we left the Ladrões, about the 10th Day of September in the Evening, and stood away E. S. E. with the Wind N. N. W. a fresh Gale; after this, I think, it was about five Days, when having stretch'd by our Account about 150 Leagues, we steer'd away more to the Southward, our Course S. E. by S.

And now, it ever, I expected to do something by Way of Discovery; I knew very well there were few, if

any, had ever steer'd that Course; or that if they had, they had given but very little Account of their Travels. The only Person who leave any Thing worth Notice; being Cornelius Vanschouton and Francis La Mare who, tho' they sail'd very much South, yet say little to the Purpose, as I shall shew presently.

The 16th Day after we parted from the Ladrões, being, by Observation, in the Latitude of 17 Degrees South of the Line, one of our Men cried a Sail, a Sail, which put us into some fit of Wonder, knowing, nothing of a Ship of any Bulk could be met with in those Seas; but our fit of Wonder was soon turn'd to a fit of Laughter, when one of our Men from the Foretop, cried out Land, which indeed was the Case; and the first Sailor was sufficiently laugh'd at for his Mistake, tho' give him his due, it look'd at first as like a Sail, as ever any Land at a Distance could look.

Towards Evening, we made the Land very plain, Distance about seven Leagues S. by E. and found that it was not an Island, but a vast Tract of Land, extended, as we had Reason to believe, from the Side of Gilolo, and the Spice Islands, or that which we call Nova Guiney, and never yet fully discover'd. The Land lying away from W. N. W. to the S. E. by South, still Southerly.

I that was making all possible Discovery, was willing, besides the Convenience of Water, and perhaps fresh

Provisions,

Provisions, to put in here, and see what Kind of a Country it was: So I order'd the Brigantine to stand in for the Shore: They sound'd, but found no Ground within half a League of the Shore; so they hoisted out their Boat and went close in with the Shore, where they found good Anchor hold in about 36 Fathom, and a large Creek, or Mouth of a River; here they found 11 or 13 Fathom soft ouzy Sand, and the Water half fresh at the Mouth of the Creek.

Upon Notice of this, we stood in, and came all to an Anchor in the very Creek; and sending our Boats up the Creek, found the Water perfect fresh and very good upon the Ebb, about a League up the River.

Among all the Islands in this Part of the World, that is to say, from the Philipines Eastward, of which there are an infinite Number, we never came near any, but we found ourselves surrounded with Canoes and Variety of Boats, bringing off to us Cocoa Nuts, Plantanes, Roots and Greens, to traffick for such Things as they could get; and that in such Numbers as we were tired with them, and sometimes alarm'd, and oblig'd to fire at them. But here, tho' we saw great Numbers of People at a Distance from the Shore, yet we saw not one Boat or Bark, nor any Thing else upon the Water.

We stay'd two or three Days taking in fresh Water, but it was impossible to restrain our Men from going on Shore, to see what Sort of a Coun-

try it was; and I was very willing they should go so: Accordingly, two of our Boats, with about 30 Men in both of them, went on Shore on the East Side of the Creek or Harbour, where our Ship lay.

They found the Country look'd wild and savage enough, but tho' they could find no Houses, or speak with the Inhabitants, they saw their Footsteps and their Seats where they had sat down under some Trees; and after wandering about a little, they saw People, both Men and Women at Distance; but they run away from our Men, at first Sight, like frightened Deer; nor could make any Signal to them to be understood; for when our Men halloo'd, and call'd after them, they run again as if they had been bewitch'd.

Our Men gather'd a great Variety of green Stuff, tho' they knew not of what Kind, and brought it all on Board, and we eat a great deal of it; some we boyl'd and made Broth of; and some of our Men, who had the Scurvy, found it did them a great deal of Good; for the Herbs eat all Spicey, and a most Pleasant agreeable Taste, but none of us could tell what to call them, tho' we had several Men on Board who had been among the Spice Islands before in Dutch Ships.

We were very uneasy that we could get nothing here but a little Grass and Pot-herbs, as our Men call'd it, and the Men mov'd me to have two Boats, and go up the River as high as the Tide would carry them: This I consented to, being
as

as willing to make the Discovery as they: So I order'd the Captain of the Madagascar Ship, who had, as I have said been formerly my second Mate; I say, I order'd him to go along with them.

But in the Morning, a little before the Flood was made, I was call'd out of my Cabbin to see an Army, as they told me, coming to attack us: I turn'd out hastily enough, you may be sure, and such an Army no Ship were ever attack'd with; for we spy'd three or four hundred black Creatures, came playing and tumbling down the Stream, towards us, like so many Porpoises in the Water, I was not satisfied at first that they were human Creatures; but would have persuaded our Men, that they were Sea-monsters; and that they were certainly Fishes of some strange Kind.

But they quickly undeceiv'd us, for they came swimming about our Ships, staring and wondering, and calling to one another, but said not one Word to us; at least, if they did, we could not understand it.

Some of them came very near our Ship, and we made Signs to them to come on Board but they would not venture: We toss'd one of them a Rope, and he took hold of it boldly; but as soon as we offer'd to pull, he let go, and laugh'd at us; another of them did the like, and when he let go turn'd up his black Buttocks, as in Sport at us; the Language of which, in our Country, we all knew, but whether they meant it so or not, that we cannot tell.

However, this dumb conversing with them, we did not like, neither was it to any Purpose to us; and I was resolv'd, if possible, to know something more of them than we could get thus: So I order'd out my Pinnace with six Oars, and as many other Men, well arm'd to row among them; and, if possible to take some of them and bring them on Board. They went off, but the six Oar Pinnace, tho' a very nimble Boat, could not row so fast as they could swim; for if pulling with all their might, they came near one of them, immediately, like Dog and Duk, they would drive and come up again 30 or 40 Yards off; so that our Men did not know which Way to row after them. However, at last, getting among the thickest of them, they got hold of two, and with some Difficulty, dragg'd them in; but were surpris'd to find they were both Women. However, they brought them on Board naked as they were. When they came on Board, I order'd they should have two Pieces of Linnen wrapt round their Waists to cover them, which they seem'd extraordinary glad of: We gave them also several Strings of Beads, and our Men ty'd them about their Necks, and about their Arms like Bracelets, and they were wonderfully pleas'd with that. *Others of our Men gave each of them a Pair of Scissars, with Needles, and some Thread and threading the Needles, shew'd them how to sew with them: We gave them Food, and each of them a Dram of Arrack, and made Signs to know of them were they liv'd; they pointed up to the River, but we could by no Means understand them. When*
we

we had dress'd them up thus with Necklaces, and Bracelets and Linnen, we brought them up upon the Deck and made them call to their Country Folks, and let them see how well they were us'd, and ask them to come on Board, but they would not venture.

However, as I thought, the Discovery we were to make, would be something the easier on the Account of the Usage of these two young Women; for they were not, as we guess, above 20 or 22 Years of Age; we resolv'd, that the Boat should go on, as we intended up the River; and that, as these two Women pointed that Way, they should carry them along with them.

Accordingly we sent too Shallops or large Boats, which carry'd together 60 Men all well arm'd. We gave them store of Beads and Knives, and Scissars, and such Baubles with them, with Hatchets and Nails, and Hooks, Looking-glasses, and the like; and we built up the Sides of the Boat and Stern, and cover'd them with Boards to keep off Arrows and Darts, if they should find Occasion; so that they look'd like London Barges: In this Posture, soon as the Tide of Flood was made up, our Men went away, carrying a Drum and a Trumpet in each Boat; and each Boat had also two Pattereroes fix'd on the Gunnel near the Bow.

Thus furnish'd they went off about 11 o'Clock in the Forenoon, and to my very great Uneasiness, I heard no more of them in four Days; the whole Ship's Company were indeed

surpriz'd at their Stay, and the Captain of the Sloop would fain have had me let him have sail'd up the River with the Sloop as far as the Channel would serve; which indeed we found was deep enough. Indeed, as I was unwilling to run any more Risques; I could not persuade myself, but, that the Force I had already sent, was sufficient to fight 5000 naked Creatures, such as the Natives seem'd to be; and therefore I was very unwilling to send: However, I consented; at last, to have our long Boat and two smaller Boats mann'd with 54 Men more, very well arm'd and cover'd from Arrows and Darts, as the other had been, go up the River, upon this solemn Promise, and with express Order, to return the next Day at farthest; ordering them to fire Guns as they went up the River to give Notice to their Fellows, if they could be heard that they were coming; and that in the mean Time, if I fir'd three Guns, they should immediately return.

They went away with the Tide of Flood, a little before Noon, and went up the River about five Leagues; the Tide running but slowly up, and a strong Fresh of Land-water that check'd the Tide coming down; so that when the Tide was spent, they came to an Anchor; they found the River contrary to their Expectation, continued both deep enough, and was wider in Breadth than where the Ships were at Anchor; and that it had another Mouth or Outlet into the Sea some Leagues farther East; so that the Land to the East of us, where our Men went on Shore, was but an Island, and had many

ny Inhabitants, if any at all; the the People they had seen there, having, Possibly, swam over the other Arm or Branch of the River to observe our Ships the nearer.

As our Men found they could go no farther for want of the Tide, they resolv'd to come to an Anchor; but just as they were founding to see what Ground they had, and what Depth, a small Breeze at N. E. sprung up; by which they steem'd the Current, and reach'd up about two Leagues farther, when they hove over their Grapling in five Fathom Water, soft Ground; so that all this Way, and much farther, all our Ships might have gone up the Channel, being as broad as the Thames is about Vaux-hall.

It must be observ'd, that all along this River, they found the Land, after they came past the Place where the other Branch of the River broke off, Eastward, was full of Inhabitants on both Sides, who frequently came down to the Water's-side to gaze and look at our Boats. But always, when our Men call'd to them as if they thought our Men enquir'd after their Fellows, they pointed up the River; which was as much as to say, they were gone farther that Way.

However, our Men being not able to go any farther against the Tide, took no Notice of that; but after a little while, some of them, in one of the smaller Boats, row'd towards the Shore, holding up a white Flag to the People, in Token of Peace: But it was all one, and would have been

all one, for ought we know, if they had held up a red Flag, for they ran all away, Men, Women and Children; nor could our Men by any Persuasions, and Gestures and Signs of any Kind, prevail on them to stay, or hardly so much as to look at them.

The Night coming on, our Men knew not well what Course to take; they saw several of the Indians Dwellings and Habitations, but they were all at a Distance from the River, occasion'd, as our Men suppos'd, by the Rivers overflowing the flat Grounds near its Banks, so as to render those Lands not habitable.

Our Men had a great Mind to have gone up to one of the Towns they saw, but he that Commanded, would not permit it, but told them, that if they could find a good landing Place, that they might go on Shore, except a few, to keep the Boats, they would venture; upon which the smallest Boat row'd up about a Mile, and found a small River running into the greater, and here they all resolv'd to Land: But first they fir'd two Muskets, to give Notice, if possible, to their Comrades, that they were at Hand, however they heard nothing of them.

What Impression the Noise of the two Muskets made among the Indians, they could not tell, for they were all run away before.

They were no sooner on Shore, but considering, that they had not above two Hours Day; and that the Indian Villages were at least two Miles off, they call'd a Council, and resolv'd

resolv'd not to march so far into a Country they knew so little of, and to be left to come back in the Dark; so they went on Board again and waited till Morning, however they view'd the Country, found it was a fertile Soil, and a great Herbage on the Ground: There were few Trees near the River; but farther up, where the Indians Dwellings were, the little Hills seem'd to be cover'd with Woods, but of what Kind they knew not.

In the Morning before Break of Day, some of our Men fancied they heard a Gun fir'd up the River; upon which, the Officer order'd two Muskets to be fir'd again, as had been done the Evening before; in about a Quarter of an Hour they were answered by the like Firing, by which, our Men knew that their Comrades heard them; so that without pursuing their intended Landing, the Tide being then running upwards, they weigh'd, and set to their Oars, having little or no Wind, and that which was blowing down the Stream.

After they had gone about a League, they heard a confused Noise at a great Distance, which surprized them a little at first; but as they perceived it drew nearer and nearer, they waited a-while, when they perceived first here and there some People, then more and then about two or three hundred Men and Women together running, and every one carrying something,

Whither it was they were going, or what it was they carried, we could not tell they came nearer; when we

found that they were all loaded with Provisions, Cocoa Nuts, Roots, Cabbages, and a great Variety of Things which we knew little of; and all these were carrying down to our Ship, as we understood afterwards, in Gratitude for our good Usage of the two young Women.

When these People saw our Men and their three Boats, they were at a full Stop, and once or twice they were ready to lay down all their Loads and run for it; but ours made Signs of Peace, and held up a white Flag to them.

Some of them, it seems, having, as we found, convers'd with our Men, had a little more Courage than the rest, and came to the shore Side, and look'd at the Boats: One of our Men bethought himself of a Stratagem to make known to them our Desire of Peace with them; and taking a String of Beads and some Toys, he held them up at the End of the Boat Hook Staff, and shew'd them to the Indians, pointing to them with his Hand, and then Pointing with the other Hand, to what the Indians carry'd, and to his Mouth, intimating, that we wanted such Things to eat, and would give him the Beads for them.

One of the Indians presently understood him, and throws himself into the Water, holding a Bundle of Plants, such as he had truss'd up together, upon his Head, and swimming with the other Hand, and comes so near the Boat, where our Men held out the Staff, as to reach the End of the Staff, take off the String of Beads and

and Toys, and hung his Bunch of Trash, for it was no better, upon the Hook, and get back again, but would come no nearer.

When he was got on Shore again, all his Comrades came about him, to see what he had got; he hung the String of Beads about his Neck, and run dancing about, with the other Things in his Hand, as if he had been mad.

What our Men got was a Trifle, of less worth than a good Bunch of Carrots in England, but yet it was useful, as it brought the People to converse with us, for after this, they brought us Roots, and Fruits innumerable, and began to be very well acquainted with us.

By that Time our Men had chattered thus, four or five Times, they first heard, and in a little while after, saw their two great Boats with their Fellows coming down the River at about two Miles distance, with their Drums and Trumpets, and making Noise enough.

They had been, it seems, about three Leagues higher up, where they had been on Shore among the Indians, and had set at Liberty the two Maidens, for such, they understood they were; who, letting their Friends see how fine they were dress'd, and how well they were us'd, the Indians were so exceedingly oblig'd, and shew'd themselves so grateful, that they thought nothing too much for them; but brought out all the Sorts of Provisions, which their Country produc'd, which, it seems, amounted to nothing, but Fruits, such as Plantanes Cocoa Nuts, Oranges and Lemons, and such Things, and Roots, which we

could give no Name to; but, that which was most for our Use, was a very good sort of Maiz, or Indian Corn, which made us very good Bread.

They had, it seems, some Hogs, and some Goats, but our Men got only six of the latter; which were at hand, and were very good. But, that which was most remarkable, was, that whereas, in all the Islands within the Tropicks, the People are thievish, treacherous, fierce and Mischievous; and are arm'd with Lances, or Darts, or Bows and Arrows: these appear'd to be a peaceable, quiet, inoffensive People; nor did our Men see any Weapon among them; except a long Staff, which most of the Men carried in their Hands, being made of a Cane, about eight Foot long, and an Inch and half Diameter, much like a Quarter Staff; with which they would leap over small Brooks of Watet, with admirable Dexterity.

The People were black or rather of a tawny dark Brown; their Hair long, but, curling in very handsome Rings: They went generally quite naked, both Men and Women; except that in two Places, our Men said, they found some of the Women cover'd, from the Middle downwards. They seem'd to have no Conversation with the Sea at all, nor did we see so much as one Boat among them; nor did any of the Inhabitants dwell near the Sea; but cultivated their Lands very well, in their Way; having abundance of Greens and Fruits, growing about their Houses; and upon which, we found, they chiefly liv'd. The Climate seem'd to be very hot, and yet the Country very fruitful.

These

These People, by all we could perceive, had never had any converse, with the rest of the World by Sea, what they might have by Land, we know not; but as they lie quite out of the Way of all Commerce, so it might be probable, they never had seen a Ship, or Boat; whether any European Ship, or so much as a Peragua of the Islands. We have mention'd their nearest Distance to the Ladroons, being at least 400 Leagues, and from the Spice Islands, and Country of New Guinea, much more; but as to the European Shipping, I never heard of any, that ever went that Way, neither do I believe, any ever did.

I take the more Notice of these People's not having convers'd, as I say, with the World, because of the Innocence of their Behaviour, their peaceable Disposition, and their Way of living upon the Fruits and Produce of the Earth; also their Cultivation, and the Manner of their Habitations; no Signs of Rapine or Violence appearing among them. Our Stay here was so little, that we could make no Enquiry into their Religion, Manner of Government, and other Customs: Nor have I Room to crowd many of these Things into this Account. They went indeed naked, some of them stark naked, both Men and Women; but I thought, they differ'd in their Countenances, from all the wild People that I ever saw; that they had something singularly honest, and sincere in their Faces; nor did we find any Falsehood or Treachery among them.

The Gattitude they express'd, for

our kindly using, the two young Women I have mention'd, was a Token of generous Principals; and our Men told us, that they would have given them whatever they could have asked, if they had it.

In a Word, it was on their Account, they sent that little Army of People to us, laden with Provisions, which our Men met, before the two Shallops came down. But all the Provisions they had, consisted chiefly in Fruits of the Earth, Cocoa Nuts, Plantains, Oranges Lemons, &c. and Maiz, or Indian Corn. We had not any sufficient Time with them, to enquire after what Traffick they had, or whether any Thing fit for us; that they had, several fragrant Plants; and I believe, some Spices, as particularly Cinnamon, that we found, but what else the Country produces, we know not.

We came away from hence, after seven Days Stay having observ'd little of the Country, more than that it seem'd to be very pleasant, but very hot; the Woods were all flourishing and green; and the Soil rich, but no great Matter, that could be the Subject of Trade: But an excellent Alace, to be a Bait Land, or Port of Refreshment in any Voyage, that might afterwards be undertaken that Way.

We set Sail, I say, from hence in seven Days, and finding the Coast lie fairly on our Starboard side, kept the Land on board all the Way Distance about three Leagues; and it held us thus, about an hundred and twenty Leagues due East; when on a sudden,

sudden, we lost Sight of the Land; whether it broke off, or whether it drew off farther South, we could not tell.

We went on two or three Days more, our Course S. E. when we made Land again: But found it to be only two small Island, lying S. and by E. Distance nine Leagues. We stood on to them, and two of our Boats went on Shore, but found nothing for our Purpose; no Inhabitants, nor any living Creatures, except Sea Fowls, and some large Snakes; neither was there any fresh Water. So we call'd that Land Cape Dismal.

The same Evening, we stood away full South, to see if we could find out the Continuance of the former Land: But as we found no Land, so a great Sea coming from the South we concluded, we should find no Land that Way. And varying our Course Easterly, we ran, with a fair fresh Gale at N. W. and by W. for seven Days more; in all which Time, we saw nothing but the open Sea, every Way; and, making an Observation, found, we had pass'd the Southern Tropick; and that we were in the Latitude of 26 Degrees and 13 Minutes; after which, we continued our Course still Southerly for several Days more; 'till we found by another Observation, that we were in 32 Degrees, and 20 Minutes.

This Evening we made Land over our Starboard Bow, Distance six Leagues, and stood away South and by East: But the Wind slackening, we lay by in the Night; and, in the

Morning found the Land bearing E. and by S. Distance one Leagues, and an half; a good Shore and founding, we found about 35 Fathom, stony Ground. Then we hoisted our Boat out, and sent it on Shore for Discoveries, to sound the Depth of the Water, and see for a good Harbour to put in at.

They went quite in with the Shore, where they found People Men and Women, crowding together to look at us. When our Men came close to the Land, they hung out a white Flag; but the wild People understood nothing of the Meaning of it; but stood looking and amaz'd; and we have great Reason to believe, that they never had seen any Ship or Bark of any Nation, in all their Lives, but their own. We found no Boats, or Sails, or any Thing they had, to make use of on the Water; But some Days after we saw several small Canoes, with three or four Men in each.

Our Men not being able to speak any Thing for them to understand, or to understand any Thing they said, the first Thing they did, was to make Signs to them for something to eat. Upon which, three of them seem'd to go away, and coming again in a few Minutes, brought with them several Bundles or Bunches of Roots; some Plantanes, and some green Lemons, or Limes, and laid down all upon the Shore, our Men took Courage then to go on Shore, and taken up what they brought, they set up a Stick, and upon the End of it, hung five Bunches or Strings of blew and white Beads, and went on Board again.

Never

Never was such Joy among a wild People discover'd, as these People shew'd, when they took the Beads off the Stick: They danc'd and caper'd and made a thousand antick Gustures; and inviting our Men on Shore laid their Hands upon their Breast across; and then look'd up, intimating a solemn Oath, not to hurt us.

Our Men made Signs, by which they made them understand, that they would come again next Morning, and also that they should bring us more Eatables; accordingly, we sent three Boats the next Morning, and our Men carried Knives, Scissars Beads Looking-Glasses, Combs and any Toys they had, not forgetting Glass-Beads, and Glass-Earrings in abundance.

The Indians were very ready to meet us, and brought us Fruits and Herbs as before; but Three of them, who stood at a Distance, held each of them a Creature exactly like a Goat, without Horns or Beard; and these was brought to Traffick with us.

We brought out our Goods, and offer'd every One something, but the Variety was surprising to them, who had never seen such Things before. But that which was most Valuable of all Things, was a Hatchet, which one of their principal Men took up, and look'd at it, felt of the Edge, and laid it down: then took it up again, wanted to know the Use of it: Upon which one of the Men took it, and stepping to a Tree that stood near, cut off a small Bough of it at one Blow: The Man was surpriz'd, and run to the Tree with it, to see if he could do so too; and finding the Virtue of it, he laid it down ran with all his

Might into the Country, and by and by returning, came two Men more with him, to shew them this wonderful Thing call'd a Hatchet.

But if they were surpriz'd with the Novelty of a Hatchet, our Men were as much surpriz'd to see hanging at the Ears of both the Men that he brought with him, large flat Pieces of pure Gold, and the Throat which they hung by, was made of the Hair of the Goats twisted very prettily together and strong enough.

Our Men offer'd to handle them, to see if they were Gold, one of the Men takes off his two Bobs, or what we might call them, and offer'd them to our Men for the Hatchet; our Men seem'd to make some Difficulty of it, as if the Hatchet was of much greater Value than those Trifles; upon which, he being, as we found, Superior, made the other pull off his two Ear-Jewels also; and so our unreasonable People took them all four, being of pure Gold, and weighing together some Grains above two Ounces, in Exchange for an old rusty Hatchet. Well however unreasonable the Price was, they did not think it so; and so over-fond was he of the Hatchet, that as soon as he had it for his own, he ran to the Tree, and in a few Minutes had so laid about him with the Hatchet, that there was not a Twig left on it that was within his reach.

This Exchange was a particular Hint to me; and I presently directed my chief Mate, and Captain Merlotte, to go on Shore the next Day and acquaint themselves as much as they could with the Natives and if possible, to find out where they had this Gold and if any Quantity was to be found.

They

They bestow'd their Time so well, and oblig'd the Natives so much, by the Toys and Trifles they gave them, that they presently told them that the Gold, which they call'd Aarah, was pick'd up in the Rivers that came down from a Mountain which they pointed to, a great Way off. Our Men prevail'd with three of them, to go with them to one of these Rivers, and gave them Beads and such Things to encourage them, but by the Way, no Hatchet, That was kept up at a high Rate, and as a Rarity, fit only for a King or some Great Man that wore Aarah on his Ears.

In a Word, they came to the River, where, the said, they found this Aarah; and the first Thing our Men observ'd there, was an Indian sitting on the Ground, and beating something with a great Stone, with another Stone in his Hand for his Hammer: They went to see what he was doing, and found, he had found, a Lump of Gold in the Sand, as big as a Swan Shot, of no regular Shape; but full of Corners, neither round nor square; and the Man was beating it flat, as well as he could.

One of our Men, who had a Hatchet in his Hand, made Signs to him, to let him flat it for him; and so turning the back Part of the Hatchet, which, by the Way, turn'd the Hatchet into a Hammer; he beat the Piece of Gold flat in an Instant; and then turning the Edges, beat it that Way, 'till he brought it to be round also.

This was so surprizing to the Man

that was beating, that he stood looking on with all Tokens of Joy and Amazement; and desiring to see the Hatchet look this Way and that Way, upon those of his Countrymen who came with us, as if asking them, if ever they saw the like.

When our Man had done, he made Signs to know if he had any more Aarah; the Man said nothing, but went down to the Brink of the River, and putting his Hand into a Hole, he brought out three little Lumps of Gold, and a great many smaller, some of them as big as a great Pin's Head, all which he had laid up there, in the Hollow of a pretty big Stone. Our Men thought it was too much, to take all that for the Hatchet; and therefore pulled out some Beads, and Pieces of Glass, and such Toys, and in short bought all this Cargo of Gold; which in the whole weigh'd near five Ounces, for about the Value of Two Shillings.

Tho' these Bargains were very agreeable to us, yet the Discovery of such a Place, and of such a Fund of Treasure, in a Part of the World which it is very probable, was never seen before by any European Eyes, nor so much as enquir'd after, was the greatest Satisfaction imaginable to me knowing the adventurous Temper of the Gentlemen, who was our principal Employer. Upon this Account, while my Men busied themselves in their daily Search after Gold, and in finding out the Rivers from whence it came, or rather where it was found, I employ'd myself to be fully inform'd where this Place was, whether it was an Island or a Continent;

continent; and having found a tolerable good Road for our Ships to ride in, I caus'd my two Shallops well mann'd, to run along the Coast, both East and West, to find which Way it lay, and whether they could find any End of it; as also to see what People, and what Provisions they could meet with

By my Observation, I found, as above, that we were in the Latitude of seven and twenty Degrees, and thirteen Minutes South Meridian, distance from the Ladroons about sixteen Degrees East. While my Shallops, were gone, I went on Shore, and some of my Men set up Tents on Shore, as well for the Convenience of their Traffick, as for their resting on Shore all Night; keeping however a good Guard, and having two of our Ship Dogs with them, who never fail'd giving them Notice, when ever any of the Natives came near them; for what ail'd the Dogs, I know not, but neither of them could bear the Sight of the Indians, and we had much to do to keep them from flying at them.

While we rode here, we had the most violent Storm of Wind, with Rain and with great Claps of Thunder, that we had yet sustain'd since we came out of England: It was our Comfort, that the Wind came off Shore, for it blew at South, and shifting between S. S. E. and S. W. with such excessive Gusts, and so furious, and withal, not only by Squals and sudden Flaws, but a settled terrible Tempest; that had it been from off Sea, as it was off Shore, we must have perish'd, there had been no Remedy; and even as it was we rode in great Danger. My Boatswain

call'd twice out to me, to cut my Masts by the Board, protesting we should either bring our Anchors home, or founder as we rode; and indeed the Sea broke over us many Times in a terrible Manner: As I said before, we had an indifferent good Road, and so we had, but not a very good one, for the Land was low, and on the East we lay a little open. However, our Ground Tackle was good and our Ship very tight, and I told the Boatswain I would rather slip the Cable, and go off to Sea, than cut the Masts: However, in about four Hours Time more, we found the Wind abate, but blew very hard for three Days after that.

I was in great Pain for my two Shallops in this Tempest, but they had both the good Luck to lie close under the Shore; and one indeed had haul'd quite upon the Land, where the Men lay on Shore under their Sail, so that they got no Damage; and about three Days after, one of them brought me Word, they had been to the West, where they had made very little Discovery, as to the Situation of the Country, and whether it was an Island or a Continent; but they had conversed with the Natives very often, and had found several that had Pieces of Gold hanging some in their Hair, and some about their Necks; and they made a shift to bring as many with them as weigh'd (all put together) seventeen or eighteen Ounces, for which they had barter'd Toys and Trifles as we did; but they found no Rivers where they could Discover any Gold in the Sands, as we had done; so that they believed it all came from that Side where we were.

But

But our other Shallop had much better Luck; she went away to the East, and by the Time she had gone about sixteen Leagues, she found the Shore break off a little, and soon after, a little more, 'till at Length they came, as it were to the Land's End; when the Shore running due South, they follow'd according to their Account, near thirteen Leagues more.

In this Time they went several Times on Shore, entered three Rivers indifferently large, at the Mouth, but grew narrow again in three or four Leagues; but a deep Channel, with two and twenty to eight and twenty Fathom Water in it all the Way, as they went.

Here they went on Shore, and traffick'd with the Natives, who, they found rude and unpolished, but a very mild unoffensive People; nor did they find them any Thing thievish, much less treacherous, as in some such Countries is the Case. They had the good Luck to find out the Place, where, as they supposed, the King of the Country resided, which was a kind of a City incompass'd with a River, almost all round; the River making a kind of double Horshoe. The Manner of their Living is too long to describe; neither could our Men give any Account of their Government, or of the Customs of the Place; but what they sought for, was Gold and Provisions, and of that they got pretty considerable.

They found the Indians terribly surprized at the first Sight of them; but after some Time, they found Means

to let them know they desir'd a Truce, and to make them understand what they meant by it.

At Length a Truce being establish'd, the King came, and with him near three Hundred Men; and soon after the Queen with Half as many Women. They were not stark naked, neither Men or Women, but wearing a loose Piece of Cloath about their Middles; what it was made of, we could not imagine: For it was neither Linnen or Woollen, Cotton or Silk, nor was it woven, but twisted and breeded by Hand, as our Women make Bone Lace with Bobbins. It seems it was the Stalk of an Herb, which this was made with, and was so strong, that I doubt not it would have made Cables for our Ships, if we had wanted to make such an Experiment.

When the King first came to our Men, they were a little shy of his Company, he had so many with him, and they began to retire; which the King perceiving, he caus'd all his Men to stop, and keep at a distance, and advanced himself with about ten or twelve of his Men, and no more.

When he was come quite up our Men to shew their breeding pull'd off their Hats, but that he did not understand, for his Men had no Hats on. But the Officer making a Bow to him, he understood that presently, and bow'd again, at which all his Men fell down flat upon their Faces, as flat to the Ground, as if they had been shot to Death with a Volley of our Shot; and they did not fall so quick, but they were up again as nimbly, and then down

flat on the Ground again; and this they did three Time, their King bowing himself to our Men at the same Time.

This Ceremony being over, our Men made Signs to them that they wanted Victuals to eat, and something to drink, and pull'd out several Things to let the People see they wou'd give something for what they might bring them.

The King understood them presently, and turning to some of his Men, he talk'd a while to them, and our Men observ'd, that while he spoke, they seem'd to be terrified, as if he had been threatening them with Death. However, as soon as he had done, three of them went away, and our Men suppos'd they went to fetch something that the King would give them; upon which, that they might be beforehand with them, our Men presented his Majesty with two Pair of Bracelets of fine Glass Beads of several Colours, and put them upon his Arms, which he took most kindly; and then they gave him a Knife with a good plain Ivory Handle, and some other odd Things. Upon receiving these noble Presents, he sends away another of his Men, and a little after two more.

Our Men observ'd that two of the Men went a great Way off toward the Hill but the other Man that he sent away first, went to his Queen, who, with her Retinue of Tawny Ladies, stood but a little Way off, and soon after her Majesty came with four Women only, attending her.

The Officer who commanded our Men, finding he should have another kind of Compliment to pay the Ladies, retir'd a little; and being an ingenious handy sort of a Man, in less than half an Hour, he, and another of his Men, made a nice Garland, or rather a Coronet of sundry Strings of Beads, and with Glass Bobs and Pendants, all hanging about it most wonderful gay; and when the Queen was come, he went up to the King, and shewing it to him, made Signs that he would give it to the Queen.

The King took it, but was so pleas'd with it, that truly he desir'd our Officer to put it upon his own Head, which he did; but when he had got it upon his own Head, he made bold to let our Men see he was King over his Wife, as well as over the rest of the Country, and that he would wear it himself.

With that our Men pull'd out a little Pocket Looking-Glass, and holding it up, he let his Majesty see his own Face, which he might reasonably suppose he had never seen before, especially not with a Crown on his Head too: That till that Looking-Glass came, and he saw his own Face, he was Grave and Majestick, and carred it something like a King; but he was so ravish'd with this, that he was quite beside himself, and jump'd and caper'd and danc'd about like a Mad-man.

All this while our Men saw nothing coming, but all was given on their Side, whereupon they made Signs again, that they wanted Provisions; he made Signs again, pointing to a Hill a good Way off, as if it wou'd come from thence very quickly; and then look'd to see if they

were

were coming, as if he was impatient till they came, as well as our People.

During this Time, one of our Men observ'd that the Queen had several Pieces of Gold, as they thought them to be hanging about her, as particularly in her Hair, and large flat Plats of Gold upon the Hinder Part of her Head, something in the Place of a Roll as our Women wear; that her Hair was wound about it in Rolls breeded together very curiously, and having inform'd our Officer, he made Signs to the King, for Leave to give the Queen something, which he consented to. So he went to her Majesty, making a Bow as before. But this Complaisance surpriz'd her, for upon his bowing himself, on a sudden falls the Queen and all her four Ladies flat on the Ground, but were up again in a Moment; and our People wondered how they could throw themselves so flat on their Faces, and not hurt themselves, nor was it less to be wondred at, how they could so suddenly jump up again, for they did not rise up gradually, as we must do, with the Help of our Hands and Knees, if we were extended so flat on our Faces; but they, with a Spring, whether with their Hands or their whole Bodies we know not, jumped up all at once, and were upon their Feet immediately.

This Compliment over, our Officer went up to the Queen, and ties about her Nece a most delicate Necklace of Pearl, that is to say, of large handsome white Glass Beads, which might in England cost about Four Pence Half-penny, and to every one of her Ladies he gave another of

smaller Beads, and Differing Colours than those which he gave the Queen: Then he presented her Majesty with a long String of Glass Beads, which being put over her Head, reach'd down to her Waist before, and joyned in a kind of a Tossel, with a little Knot of blue Ribbon, which she was also extreamly pleas'd with, and very fine she was.

The Queen made it seems, the first Return, for stepping to one of her Women, our Men observed that she took something out of her Hair; and she let her tie her Hair up again; after which she brought it, and gave it to our Officer, making Signs to know if it was acceptable: It was a Piece of Gold that weighed about two Ounces and a Half, it had been beaten as flat as they knew how to beat it, but the Metal was of much more Beauty to our Men, than the Shape.

Our Officer soon let them see that he accepted the Present, by laying it to his Mouth and to his Breast, which he found was the Way when they liked any Thing. In short, our Officer goes to work again, and in a little while, he makes a little Coronet for the Queen, as he had done before, tho' less, and without asking Leave of the King, went up to her, and put it upon her Head, and then gave her a little Looking-Glass, as he had done to the King to look at herself.

She was so surpriz'd with this, that she knew not what to do with herself, but to shew her Gratitude, she pull'd out another Plate of Gold out of

of her own Hair, and gave it to our Officer, and not content with that, she sent one of her Women to the Crowd of Women that first attended her, and stript them of all the Gold they had, we know not, but she brought so many pieces, that when our Men had them (for she gave all to them) they weighed almost two Pound Weight.

But this was not all, when she was thus dress'd, up she stept forward, very gracefully towards the King, to shew him what she had got; and finding the King dress'd up as fine as herself, they had Work enough for near two Hours, to look at one another and admire their new Ornaments.

Our Men reported that the King was a Tall well Shap'd Man, of a very Majestick Deportment, only that when he laugh'd, he shew'd his Teeth too much, which however, were as white as Ivory: As for the Queen, saying that her Skin was of a Tawney Colour, she was a very pretty Woman; very Tall, a sweet Countenance, admirable Features, and in a Word, a compleatly handsome Lady.

She was very odly dress'd; she was quite naked from her Head to below her Breasts: Her Breasts were plump and round, not flaggy and hanging down, as it is general with all Indian Women, some of whose Breasts hung as low as their Bellies; but Sitting as Beautifully up, as if they had been lac'd up with Stays round her Body; and below her Breasts, she had a broad Piece of a Skin of some curious Creature, spotted like a Leopard, or rather, as I believe, it was some

fine spotted Deer. This was wrapped round her very tight, like a Body-Girt to a Horse; and under this, she had a Kind of Petticoat as before describ'd, hanging down to her Ancles. As for Shoes or Stockings, they were only such as Nature had furnish'd. Her Hair was black, and as they suppos'd, very long; being wreath'd up, twisted in long Locks about the Plate of Gold she wore, and when she pull'd off the Plate of Gold as above it hung down her Back, and upon her Shoulders gracefully enough; but it seems she did not think so, for as soon as she found it so fallen down, she caus'd one of her Women to roll it all up and tye it in a great Knot which hung down in her Neck, and did not look so well as when it was loose.

While the King and the Queen were conversing together about their fine Things as above, our Men went back to their Boat where they left the Purchase they had got, and furnish'd themselves with other Things fit to Traffick with, as they saw Occasion; and they were not quite come up to the King again, when they perceiv'd that the Men the King had sent up into the Country were returned; and that they brought with them a great Quantity of such Provisions they had; which chiefly consisted in Roots and Maiz or Indian Corn, and several Fruits which we had never seen before. Some of them resembled the large European Figs; with some great Jars of Water, having Herbs steep'd in it, and Roots, that made it look as white as Milk, and drank like Milk sweeten'd with Sugar, but more delicious, and exceeding

ceeding Cool and Refreshing. They brought also a great Quantity of Oranges, but they were neither Sweet nor Sour, and our Men believed they were not ripe: But when they were drest, after the Manner of the Country, which they shew'd our Men how to do. That is to say, to roast them in the Fire, they eat admirably well, and our Men brought a great many away to us, and when we roasted them, they exceeded all that ever I tasted.

After our Men had receiv'd what they brought, and shewn that they were acceptable to them, the King made Signs that he would be gone, but would come again to them the next Morning; and pointing to the Queen's Head, where the Plate of Gold had been, that she gave to our Men, intimated, that he would bring some of that with him the next Day. But while he was making these Signs, one of his other Messengers came back and gave the King something into his Hand, wrap'd up, which our Men could not see: As soon as the King had it, as if he had been proud to show our Men that he could make himself and his Queen as fine as they could make him, he pull'd it out, and first put it on his Queen (a short Thing like a Robe) which reach'd from her Neck, for he put it over her Head, only down to the spotted Skin which she wore before; and so it cover'd her Shoulders and Breast. It was made of an infinite Number and Variety of Feathers, only, and yet very curiously put together; and was spangl'd, as we may call it, all over, with little Drops or Lumps of Gold; some no bigger than

a Pin's-Head, which had Holes made through them, and were strung six or seven together, and so ty'd on to the Feathers: Some as big as a large Pea, hanging single, some as big as a Horse-Bean, and beaten flat, and all hanging promiscuously among the Feathers, without any Order or Shape, which notwithstanding were very beautiful in the Whole, and made the Thing look Rich and handsome enough.

As soon as he had thus equipt his Queen, he put the other on upon himself, which as it was larger, so it had a Particular in its Shape; namely, that it cover'd his Arms almost to his Elbows, and was so made, that it came round under the Arm, and being fastened there with a String, made of a Kind of Sleeve.

As the King's Robe, or whatever it may be call'd, was larger (for it came down to his Waist) so it had a great deal more Gold about it, and larger Pieces than what the Queen wore: When their Majesties had thus put on their Robes, you may guess how glorious they look'd, but especially the Queen, who being a most charming beautiful Creature as before, was much more so. When she glitter'd thus all with Gold; our Men look'd very narrowly to observe whether there were no Diamonds, and particularly whether any Pearl among their Finery, but they could not perceive any.

In this Manner they parted for that Evening; but the People did not leave them so, for they throng'd about them; and some brought them Jars of the white Liquor, some brought them

them Roots some Fruits, some one Thing some another; and our Men gave every one of them some small Matter or other in Proportion to what they brought. At last, there came four particular tall lusty Men, with Bows and Arrows, but before they came close up to our Men, they laid down their Bows and Arrows on the Ground, and came forthwith with all the Tokens of Friendship, they were able to make.

They had two Youths with them, each of which led a tame Fawn of pretty large Growth; and when the Men came up, they gave the two Fawns to our Men; who, in Return, gave them, each of them, a Knife, and some Strings of Beads, and such Toys as they had.

Our Men observ'd, that all these Men had little Bits of Gold, some of one Shape and some of another, hanging at their Ears; and when our Men came to be familiar, they ask'd them as well as they could, where they found that Stuff, and they made Signs to the Sand in the River; and then pointed towards that Part of the Country, where our Ships lay; which signified to our Men, that the Gold was, most of it, where we lay, not there, where the King and resided. Nay, when our Men pointed again to the River where they were, and went and took up, some of the Sand, as if they would look for Gold in it, they made Signs of Laughing at it, and that there was nothing to be found there, but that it lay all the other Way.

And yet two or three of the Men,

who, when the Tide was out, went up the Bank of the River, two or three Miles upon the Sands, peeping and trying the Sands as they went, found three or four Bits of pure Gold in the Sands, tho' not bigger than Pins Heads; but no doubt, farther up the Country, they might have found more.

These four Men seeing how fond our People were of the Gold, made Signs, that they could teach Gold to them, if they would give them such Things as they lik'd; and ours again told them, they should have any thing they pleas'd, and as Earnest, they gave some Pieces of Iron, and Bits of Glass of small Value, both which they were very much delighted with, before Hand.

Early in the Morning, their four Customers came again, and brought several Men, who seem'd to be servants, along with them, loaden with Refreshments; such as the white Water, mention'd above; which they brought in earthen Pots very hard, but made so by the Sun, not by any other Fire. They brought also three small Deer with them, and a Kind of Rabbit, but larger; which our Men were very glad of. But that which was above all the rest, they brought a great Quantity Gold Dust, that is to say, some in small Lumps, some in bigger; and one of them had near a Pound weight, wrap'd in a Piece of Coney Skin, which was all so very small, that it was like Dust; which, as our Men understood afterwards, was reckon'd little worth, because all the bigger Lumps had been pick'd out of it.

Our Men, you must be sure, were vey willing to trade for this Commodity, and therefore

therefore they brought out great Variety of Things to truck with them; making Signs to them, to pick out what they lik'd; but still keeping a Reserve for the King and Queen, who they expected. Above all, they had made a Reserve for the King, of some extraordinary Hatchets which they had not yet suffer'd to be seen; with a Hammer or two, and some drinking Glasses, and the like, with some particular Toys for the Queen.

But they had Variety enough, (besides this) for the four Men; who, in short, bought so many Trinkets and Trifles, that our Men not only got all the Gold they brought, but the very Pieces of Gold out of their Ears; in Return for which, our Men gave them every one a Pair of Ear-Rings, to hang about their Ears, with a fine Drop; some of green Glass, some blue; and they were wonderfully pleas'd with the Exchange; and went back, we may venture to say, much richer than they came.

As soon as these had done, their Market, and indeed a little before, they perceiv'd at a Distance, the King and the Queen, coming with a great Retinue; so they made Signs to our Men, that they must be gone; and that they would not have the King know, that they had been there.

I must confess, the Relation of all this made me very much repent, that I had not happen'd to have put in there with the Ships; tho' indeed as the Road lay open to the East and South Winds, it might have been worse another Way; I mean, when the Storm blew. However as it is, I must report this Part, from the Account given us by my Men.

When the King and Queen came

the second Time, they came together, and dress'd up, as our Men suppos'd, with the utmost Magnificence; having the fine feather'd spangl'd Things about their Shoulders; and the King had over all his Habit, a fine spotted Robe of Deer Skins, neatly join'd together; and which, as he manag'd it cover'd him from Head to Foot; and in short, it was so very beautiful, that he really look'd like a King with it.

When he came to our Men, and the Ceremony of their meeting were over, the King, turning round, shew'd them, that he had brought them Stores of Provisions; and indeed so he had; for he had at least 50 Men attending him, loaden with Roots and Oranges, and Maiz, and such Things; in short he brought them above 20000 Oranges; a great Parcel of that Fruit like a Fig which I mention'd above, and other Fruits. After which another Party follow'd, and brought 20 live Deer; and as many of their Rabbits dead; the latter are as big as our Hares.

As they came up, the King made Signs to our Men to take them; and our Officers making Signs to thank his Majesty, he order'd one of the Queen's Attendants, to give him one of the feather'd Robes, such a one, as the King himself had on; and made mighty fine with Lumps and Tossels of Gold, as the other. And the twaney Lais advancing to him, offer'd to put it over his Head; but he took it in his Hand, and put it on himself; and look'd as like a Jack Pudding in it, as any one could desire; for it made no Figure at all upon

on him, compar'd to what it did up-
on the Indians.

When they had receiv'd all this, they could not but make a suitable Return; and therefore our Officer caus'd his Reserve to be brought out; and first he gave his Majesty, a Dozen of very fine drinking Glasses of several Sizes; with half a Dozen glass Beekers, or Cups, to the Queen, for the same Use. Then he gave the King a little Hanger, and a Belt to wear it by his Side; and shew'd him, how to buckle it on, and take it off, and how to draw it out, and put it in again.

This was such a Present, and the King was so delightful with it, that our Officer said, he believ'd the King for two Hours together, did nothing but draw it out and put it in again, put it on, and and pull it off, and the like.

Besides this they gave the King three Hatchets and shew'd him the Uses of them; also two large Hammers and a Pair of very strong large Sheers, particularly showing him, that with those Hammers, they might beat out the Gold Lump which they found in the Rivers, and with the Sheers might cut the Edges round, or into what Shape they pleas'd, when they were beaten thin.

To the Queen he gave six little Knives, and a dozen small Looking Glasses for her Ladies. Six Pair of Cissars, and a small Box full of large Needles; then he gave her some coarse brown Thread, and shew'd her how to thread the Needle, and sew

any Thing together with the Thread; all which she admired exceedingly, and call'd her Tawney Maids of Honour about her, that they might learn also. And whilst they were standing all together, our Officer (to make the King Laugh) sew'd two of her Women one to another by the Lap of their Waistcoats, or what else it might be call'd; and when they were a little surpriz'd at it, and began (as he thought) to be a little uneasy, he took the Cissars, and at one Snap, set them at Liberty again: Which pass'd for such an extraordinary Piece of Dexterity, that the King would needs have two of them Sew'd together again, on Purpose to see it Cut again: And then the King desir'd he might have a Needle and Thread himself, and a Pair of Cissars: Then he would Sew some Things together and Cut them asunder again several Times, and Laugh most heartily at the Ingenuity of it.

Besides these Things, they gave her Majesty a Pair of Ear-Rings to hang on her Ears, the Glass in them looking Green like an Emerald a Ring of Silver with false Stones in it like a Role Diamond Ring, the middle Stone red like a Ruby; which she went presently and gave to the King; but our Officer made Signs that he had one that was bigger for the King, and accordingly gave the King one much larger: And now they had done given Presents, as they thought, when the King made a Sign to the Queen, which she understood, and called one of her Women, she brought a small Parcel, which the Queen gave our Officer into his Hand; wherein was about 11 pound Weight of Gold-Dust,

Dust, but as before, no big Lumps in it.

Our Men having thus finish'd their Traffick, and being about to come away, they made Signs to the King, that they would come again and bring him more fine Things; at which the King Smiled, and pointed to the Gold, as if telling them he would have more of that for them when they came again.

Our Men had now their Expectations fully answer'd; and, as I said, had ended thier Traffick; and taken Leave of the King, and all his Retinue, retired to their Shallop, the King and Queen going away to their City as above; the Wind blowing Northerly, they were seven Days before they got down to us in the Ship; during which time, they had almost famish'd the Deer they had left: Five of which they had kept to bring us alive, and yet they went two or three times on Shore to get Food for them by the Way.

We were all glad to see them again, and I had a great deal of Reason to be very well satisfied with the Account of their Traffick, tho' not much with their Discovery, for they were not able to give us the least Account whether that Land was a Continent or an Island.

But let that be how it will, 'tis certainly a Country yet unfrequented by any of the Christian Part of Mankind, and perhaps may ever be so, and yet may be as rich as any other Part of the World yet discover'd. The Mountains in most of the Is-

lands, as well as of the main Land in those Parts abounding in Gold or Silver, and no question, as well worth searching after, as the Coast of Guiney; where, tho' the Quantity they find is considerable, yet it is at this Time sought after by so many, and the Negroes taught so well how to Value it, that but a little is brought away at a Time, and so much given for it, that Computing the Charge of the Voyage, is oftentimes more than it is worth.

Whereas tho' it is true, that what Gold is found here is a great Way off; yet, I am persuaded, such Quantities are to be had, and the Price given for it so very Trifling, that it would be well worth searching for.

I reckon, that including the Gold our Shallop brought, and what we got on Shore where we lay, we brought away about 24 pound Weight of Gold. The Expence of which, we could not Value at above 10 or 11 Pound in England put it all together; and reckoning for all the Provisions we got there, which supply'd us for 20 Days after we came away.

For while our Shallop was making her Visit thus to the Royal Family, &c. as is related, our Men were not Idle on Shore, but partly by Trade with the Natives, and by Washing the Sands in the small Rivers, we got such a Quantity of Gold, as well satisfied us for the Stay we made.

We had been about 18 Days here when our Shallop return'd, and we stay'd a Week more Trafficking with the People: And I am persuaded, if

we

we had a Mind to have settle there and stay'd till now, we should have been very Welcome to the People. We saw neither Horse or Cow, Mule, Ass, Dog or Cat, or any European Sort of Creatures (except that our Men shot some Wild-Ducks and Widgeon exactly the same which we see in England, and very Fat and Good, but easier to shoot than in England, having never been acquainted with the Flash and Noise of Guns as ours have been: We also found a Sort of Partridges in the Country not much unlike our own, and a great many of the Whistling Plovers the same with ours.

Tho' this Month Stay was unexpected, yet, we had no Reason to think our Time ill spent. However, we did not think we ought to lie here too long what ever we got. So we Weigh'd and stood off to Sea, steering still S. E. keeping the Shore of this Golden Country in Sight, till our Men told us they found the Land fall off to the South. Then we steer'd away more Southerly for six or eight Days, not losing Sight of Land all the Time, till by an Observation, we found we were in the Latitude of 34 Degrees and an Half, South of the Line; our Meridian Distance from the Ladrões, 22 Degrees 30 Minutes East; when a fresh Gale of Wind springing up at South and by East, oblig'd us to Haul Close for that Evening; at Night it blew such a Storm, that were oblig'd to yield to the Force of it, and go away afore it to the N. or N. by W. till we came to the Point of that Land we past before; here the Land tending to West

we run in under the Lee of a steep Shore, and came to an Anchor in 25 Fathom Water, being the same Country we were in before. Here we rid very safe for five Days, the Wind continuing to blow very hard all the Time from the South East.

My Men would fain have had me gone a Shore again, and traffick'd with the People for more Gold; but I, who was still in quest of farther Discoveries, thought, I knew enough of this Place, to tempt my Friend the Merchant, whose favourite Design was that of making new Discoveries, to another Voyage there; and that was enough for me. So I declin'd going on Shore again, except, that we sent our Boats for a Recruit of fresh Water, and our Men, while they were filling it, shot a Brace of Deer, as they were feeding by the Side of a swamp or moist Ground; and also some Wild-Ducks. Here we set up a great wooden Cross, and wrote on it, the Names of our Ships, and Commanders; and the Time that we came to an Anchor there.

But we were oblig'd to a farther Discovery of this Country than we intended, by the following Accident: We had unmoor'd early in the Morning, and by Eight o'Clock were under Sail; by Ten we had doubled the Point I mentioned above, and stood away South, keeping the Shore on Board, at the Distance of about two Leagues West.

The next Day, the Officers, who had been with the Shallop, shew'd us the Opening or Mouth where he put
in

in, and where he had made his Traffick with the King of the Country, as you have heard.

We went on still for two Days, and still we found the Land extending itself South till the third Day in the Morning, we were a little surpriz'd to find ourselves, as it were, embay'd; being in the Bottom of a deep Gulph, and the Land appearing right a Head, Distance about three Leagues; the Coast having turn'd away to the East and South, very high Land and Mountainous; and the Tops of some of the Hills cover'd with Snow.

Our second Mate and the Boatswain, upon this Discovery, were for coming about, and sent to me for Orders to make Signals to the other Ship and our Brigantine, who were both a-Head, to do the like; but I, who was willing to acquaint myself, as fully as I could, with the Coast of the Country, which I made no Question I should have Occasion to come to again, said No, No, I will see a little farther first. So I run on, having an easy Gale at N. E. and good Weather, till I came within about a League and an Half of the Shore, when I found, that in the very Bite or Nook of the Bay, there was a great Inlet of Water, which either must be a Passage or Streight between the Land we had been on Shore upon; which in that Case, must be a great Island, or that it must be the Mouth of some extraordinary great River.

This was a Discovery too great to be omitted, so I order'd the Brigantine to stand in with an easy Sail, and see

what Account could be had of the Place: Accordingly they stood in, and we follow'd about a League; and then lay by, waiting their Signals. I had particularly order'd them to keep two Boats a-Head to sound the Depth all the Way, and they did so; and how it happen'd, we know not, but on a sudden, we heard the Sloop fire two Guns first, and then one Gun; the first was a Signal to bring too, and come no farther; the next was a Signal of Distress; we immediately tak'd to stand off, but found a strong Current setting directly into the Bite, and there not being Wind enough for to stem the Current, we let go our Anchors in 22 Fathom Water.

Immediately we mann'd out all the Boats we had, great and small, to go and assist our Brigantine, not knowing what Distress she might be in; and they found she had driven up, as we were like to have done, too far into the Channel of a Large River, the Mouth of which, being very broad, had several Shoals in it; and tho' she had dropp'd her Anchor just upon Notice which the Boats who were Sounding, gave her; yet she tayl'd a-Ground upon a Sand, and stuck fast; our Men made no Doubt but she would be lost, and began to think of saving the Provisions and Ammunitions out of her. The two Long-Boats accordingly began to lighten her; and first they took in her Guns, and let out all her Casks of Water; then they began to take in her great Shot and heavy Goods. But by this Time, they found their Mistake, for the Current, which I mention'd, was nothing, but a strong Tide of Flood; which, the Indraght of the River being very great, ran up with a very great Force; and, in something less than

than an Hour, the Brigantine floated again.

However she struck so long upon the Sand, and the Force of the Current or Tide was so great, that she receiv'd considerable Damage; and had a great deal of Water in her Hold. I immediately order'd our Boats to row to the Land, on both Sides, to see, if they could find a Place to lay her on Shore in; they did so, and found a very convenient Harbour, in the Mouth of a small River; which empty'd itself into the great River, about two Leagues within the Foreland of it, on the North Side; as the River Medway runs into the Thames, within the Mouth of it, on the South Side; only this was not far up.

Here they ran in the Sloop immediately, and the next Day we came thither also; our Boats having sound-ed the whole Breadth of the main River, and found a very good Channel, half a League broad, having from 17 to 24 Fathom Water all the Way, and very good riding.

Here we found it absolutely necessary, to take every Thing out of the Brigantine, to search her Bottom; for her lying on Shore had strain'd her Seams, and broke one of her Floor Timbers; and having Hands enough, our Men unloaded her in a very little Time, and making a little Dock for her, mended all the Damage in about 10 Days Time. But seeing her in so good a Condition, and the Place so convenient, I resolv'd to have her Bottom new chalk'd and payd; so we made her as clean as she

was when she first came off the Stocks.

This I took for a good Opportunity, to careen and clean our other Ships too; for we had done little to them since we came from Madagascar. We found our Madagascar Ship much Worm eaten in her sheathing, which we help'd as well as we could, by new nailing, and by taking out some Pieces of her sheathing, and putting new ones in. But as to our great Ship, she was sheath'd with Lead, and so had receiv'd no Damage at all; only that she was very foul, which we remedied by scraping and cleaning, and new graving her quite over.

We were not all employ'd in this Work, and therefore we had leisure to make the best of our Time for the Main Work of new Discoveries. And now I resolv'd to leave it no more to under Officers, as I had done before, viz when I gave the Command of the Shallop, that traded with the King and Queen as above, to a Midshipman, which I was very sorry for, tho' the Fellow did his Business very well too; but I say, I resolv'd not to trust any one now, but myself.

In the first Place, I took the two Shallops, and went cross the Mouth of the great River, to the South Shore, to see what Kind of a Country was to be found there. For, as to the North Side where we were, we found it to be much the same, with that Part where we had been before; only that we found no Gold, nor did we perceive, that the People

I found the Mouth of this River or Inlet, to be about four Leagues over, where I cross'd it, which was about three Leagues and an Half within the Inlet itself. But the Weather being very calm, and the Flood Tide running sharp, we let our Boat drive up in our crossing, about three Leagues more; and we found the Channel grew narrow so fast, that where we came to Land, it was not full a League over; that about three Leagues farther, we found it a meer River; not above as broad as the Thames at Black-wall.

We found it a steep Shore, and observing a little Creek very convenient for our Purpose, we run in our Boats among some Flags or Rushes; and lay'd them as soft and as safe, as if they had been in a Dock; we went all on Shore immediately, except two Men in each Boat, left to guard our Provisions.

We had for Arms, every Man a Musket, a Pistol, and a Cutlash; and in each Boat we had six half Pikes to use, as we might have Occasion. We had also every Man a Hatchet, hung in a Frog at his Belt; and in each Boat a broad Ax and a Saw.

We were furnish'd with Strings of Beads, Bits of Glass, Glass Rings, Earrings, Pearl Necklaces, and such like Jewelry Ware, innumerable; besides Knives, Scissars, Needles, Pins, Looking-glasses, Drinking-glasses, and Toys of great Store.

We were no sooner on Shore, but we found People in abundance; for

there were two or three small Towns within a little Way of the Shore; and I suppose, we might have the more People about us, because, as we understood afterwards, they had seen us before tho' we had not seen them.

We made Signs to them, by putting our Fingers to our Mouths, and moving our Chops, as if we were eating, that we wanted Provisions; and we hung up a white Flag for a Truce. They presently understood the first Signal, but knew nothing of the last; and as to Provisions, just as had been the Case before, they brought us out Roots, and Fruits, such as they eat themselves; but such as we had never seen before. Some of them, however, were very sweet and good, and when we boyl'd them, they eat much like an English Parsnip; and we gave them Strings of Beads, Pieces of Glass, and such Things as we found, they were always very fond of.

We found the People, as I observ'd of the other, very inoffensive and sincere; not quarrellsome, nor treacherous, or mischievous in the least. And we took Care, not so much as to let them know the Use, or Manner of our Fire Arms a great while; neither was there one Piece fir'd, all the Time we were among the other People, where we had so much Gold: If there had, it had been very probable, that they would have fled the Country, in spite of all the good Usage we could have been able to have shewn them.

The People, where we were now; were not so rich in Gold, as these where we were before: But we found them

them much better stor'd with Provisions; for besides Deer, of which they had great Plenty and Variety, for they had some of a Sort, which I had never seen before, and besides an infinite Number of those Rabbits, which I mention'd before, which were as big as our Hares, and which do not burrow in the Ground, as our Conies do; they had a Kind of Sheep, large (like those of Peru, where they are us'd to carry Burthens;) and very good. They have no Wooll nor Horns, but are rather hairy, like a Goat; nor should I call them Sheep, but that their Flesh eats like Mutton; and I know not what else to call them. The Natives call'd them Huttash; but what Breed or from what Part of the World, or whether created for a Peculiar to this Part, I know not.

However, this Flesh was very agreeable, and they were fat and good; and as the Indians were mightily pleas'd with the Price we paid them, and the Goods we paid them in, they brought us more of these Huttashes than we knew what to do with; and as I cannot calculate the Rate, I suppose, we might have them for about eight Pence, or sometimes, not above six Pence cost each; for they would give us one very thankfully, for a String or two of small Beads, and think themselves mighty well paid.

I found them so plentiful, and so easy to come at, that in short, I sent 50 of them ty'd Neck and Heels, in one of the Shallops back to our Ships; and order'd them to send their Long Boats over for more; for tho it was so little a Way over, we did not

find, they had any of them on that Side the River.

We did the Indians another Piece of Service; for if they gave us Meat, we taught them to be Cooks; for we shew'd them how to roast it upon a Stick or Spit before the Fire; whereas they eat all their Meat before, either stew'd in earthen Pots over the Fire, with Herbs, such as we did not understand, or thrown on the Coals of green Wood into the Fire; which, by the Way, always made it Stink of the Smoak most intolerable.

We had a great deal of Opportunity now, to converse with the People on both Sides the River; and we found them to be not only different Nations but of a different Speech and different Customs. These on the South Side, where I now was, seem'd to be the best furnish'd with Provisions, and to live in the greatest Plenty. But those, on the North Side, appear'd better cloath'd, and a more civiliz'd Sort of People; and of the two seem'd to have, in their Countenances, something the more agreeable.

However, as they were near Neighbours, for the River only parted them, they were not very much unlike neither. That which seem'd most strange to be, was, that we found they had little Knowledge or Communication one with another: They had indeed some Boats in the River, but they were but small, and rather serv'd to just waft them over, or to fish in them, than for any Carriage; for we found none that could
carry

carry above four Men, and these very oddly made; partly as a Canoe, by hollowing a Tree, and partly by Skins of Beasts, dry'd and stuck on so, as they made waft Cloaths to the other; yet they would paddle along at a great Rate with them.

For want of understanding their Language, I could come at no Knowledge of their Religion or Worship; nor did I see any Idols among them, or any Worshipping of the Sun or Moon. But yet, as a Confirmation that all Nations, however Barbarous, have some Notion of a GOD, and some Awe of a Superior Power: So I observ'd here, that being making a Bargain with one of the Principal Men, such I perceiv'd him to be by the Respect the rest shew'd him; I say, being making a Bargain with him as well as could be done between People that understood not one Word of what either of us said, he had made Signs to bring me twelve Sheep the next Morning, for some Things that I was to deliver him of mine. I am sure the Goods were not all of them of Value sufficient to give me the least Distrust, but when I gave him the Goods without the Sheep, being as I said to trust him till next Day, he called two Men to him, and pointing to the Goods that I had put into his Hands, he tells upon his Fingers Twelve; letting them know (as I suppose) that he was to give me twelve Sheep the next Day, so far it seems they were to be Witnesses of the Agreement: Then he places his two Hands one upon each Breast turn'd very accurately with his Fingers up towards his Face, and holding them there, he looks to-

wards Heaven, with his Face turn'd upwards and with the most Gravity, Seriousnes, and Solemnity in his Countenance, that ever I saw in any Man's Face in my Life. When he had continu'd in this Posture about a Quarter of a Minute, he takes the two Men, and puts them just in the same Posture; and then he Points to me, and then to himself, by which I understood, first, that he solemnly swore to me, that he would bring the Sheep punctually and faithfully to me, and then he brought the two Men to be Bail or Security for the Performance; that is to say, to oblige themselves to perform it, if he did not.

Doubtless, those People who have any Notion of a GOD, must represent Him to themselves as something Superior, and something that sees and hears and knows what they say or do. Whether these People meant the Sun or the Moon, or the Stars, or what else I do not determine for them, but 'tis visible they understood it to be something to swear by; something that could bear Witness of their Engagement, and that being call'd to Witness it, could resent the Breach of Promise. As to those, whose Gods are Monsters, and hideous Shapes, frightful Images and terrible Figures, the Motive of their Adoration being that of meer Terror, they have certainly gross Ideas. But these People seem to act upon a more solid Foundation, paying their Reverence in a Manner much more Rational, and to something which it was much more reasonable to Worship; this appear'd the Solemnity of their Countenances, and their Behaviour in making a solemn Promise.

We found those People clothed, generally speaking, over their whole Bodies, their

their Heads, Arms, Legs, and Feet excepted; but not so agreeable as those we mention'd above; and we found that the Cloathing of these, were generally, the Skins of Beasts, but very artfully put together; so that though they had neither Needle or Thread, yet they had the same Plant as I mention'd before, the Stalk of which, would so strongly tie like a Thread, that they peel'd it off thicker or finer as they had Occasion, and made Use of it abundance of Ways to Tye and Twist, and make their Clothes with it, as well for their Occasion, as if it had been woven in a Loom.

We found several of these People had little Bits of Gold about them; but when we made Signs to them to know where they got it, and were it might be had, they made Signs again, pointing to the Country, on the North Side the River, so that we had it seems, chopt upon the right Gold Coast, in our first coming: They pointed indeed likewise, to some very high Mountains, which we saw at a great Distance S. W. so it seems as if there was Gold found that way also; but it seem the People here had not much of it for there Share.

The Men here, had Bows and Arrows, and they used them so dexterously, that a Wild-Goose flying over our Heads, one of the Indians, shot it quite through with an Arrow. One of our Men was so provoked, to see them, as it were, to out do him; that some time after, seeing a Couple of Ducks flying fair for a Mark, he presented his Piece and shot them both flying.

I was very angry, when I heard the Gun, had I been there, he had never got

Leave to shoot: However, when it was done, I was pleas'd well enough to see the effect it had upon these poor innocent well-meaning People; at first it frighted them to the last Degree, and I may well say it frighted them out of their Wits, for they that were near it, started so violently, that they fell down and lay Speechless for some Time: Those that were farther off, ran away, as if it had been some new Kind of Lightning and Thunder, and came out of the Earth instead of out of the Clouds: But when they saw the poor Creatures fall down dead out of the Air, and could see nothing that flew up to them to kill them, they were perfectly astonish'd, and laid their two Hands on their Breasts, and look'd up to Heaven, as as if they were saying their Prayers, in the solemnest Manner imaginable.

However, this Accident gave them terrible Ideas of us, and I was afraid at first, they would run all away from us for fear: I therefore us'd them after it, with all the Kindness and Tenderness imaginable; gave them a Trifle or other, which tho' of no Value to me, they were exceeding fond of; and as we ask'd nothing of them, but Provisions, of which they had great Plenty, and gave us enough every Day to satisfy us: As for Drink, they had none of the Milky Liquor, which we had on the other Part of the Country: But they had a Root, which they steep'd in their Water, and made it drink hot, as if Pepper had been in it, which made it so strong, that tho' it would not make our Men Drunk, it was worse, for it made them Mad.

I was so pleas'd with these People, that I came over to them every other Day,

and some of our Men lay on the Shore, under a Sail pitch'd for a Tent; and they were so safe, that at last, they kept no Watch, for the poor People neither thought any Harm; or did any, and we never gave them the least Occasion to apprehend any Thing from us, at least, not till our Men fired the Gun, and that only let them know we were able to hurt them, not giving them the least suspicion that we intended it; on the contrary, one of our Men play'd an odd Prank with them, and fully satisfy'd them that we would do them no Harm; this Man having seen one of their Children, a little laughing speechless Creature, of about two Years old; the Mother having gone from it a little Way, on some particular Occasion, the Fellow takes it and led it Home to the Tent, and kept it there all Night.

The next Morning he dress'd it up with Beads and Jewels wonderful fine, a Necklace about its Neck, and Bracelets of Beads about its Wrist, and several Strings of Beads wrapt up and ty'd in its Hair, having fed it, and laid it to sleep, and made much of it all Night; in this Figure, he carried it up in his Arms to the Indian Huts or Houses, where he had found it, and where there had been, it seems, a great Out-Cry for the Child all the Night, the Mother crying and raising her Neighbours, and in a most strange Concern.

But when some of the Women, her Neighbours, saw the Child brought back, there was a contrary Extream of Joy; and the Mother of it being (I suppose) fetch'd, she fell

a jumping and dancing, to see her Child, but also making so many odd Gestures, as our Men could not well tell for a while whether she was pleas'd or no: The Reason it seems, was, she did not know whether to Hope or Fear, for she did not know whether the Man would give back her Child, or take it away again.

But when the Man, who had the Child in his Arms, had been told by Signs, that this was the Mother, he beckon'd her to come to him, and she came, but trembling for Fear. Then he took the Child, and kissing it two or three Times, he gave it her into her Arms. But it is impossible, to express by Words, the Agony the poor Woman was in; she took the Child, and holding it in her Arms, fix'd her Eyes upon it without Motion, or as it were, without Life, for a great while; then she took it and embrac'd it in the most passionate Manner imaginable: When this was over, she fell a Crying so vehemently, till she sobb'd; and all this while, spoke not one Word: When the Crying had given sufficient Vent to her Passion, then she fell a Dancing and making a strange odd Noise, that we cannot describe, and at last she leaves the Child, and comes back to the Place where our Men were, and to the Man that brought her Child, and as soon as she came up to him, she fall flat on the Ground, as I have describ'd above, the Queen and her Women did, and up again, immediately; and thus she did three times, which it seems, was her Acknowledgment to him for bringing it back.

The next Day, for her Gratitude did not end here, she came down to our Tent, and brought with her two Sheep with a great back burden of Roots, of the Kind, which I said, they steep'd in the Water; and several Fruits of the Country, as much as two Men who came with her, could carry; and these she gave all to the Man that had brought back her Child. Our Men were so mov'd, at the affectionate Carriage of this poor Woman to her Child, that they told me it brought Tears out of their Eyes.

They took her Present, but the Man that receiv'd it, took the Woman, and dress'd her up as fine almost as he had done the Child, and she went Home like a Kind of a Queen among them.

We observ'd, while we stay'd here, that this was a most incomperable Soil, that the Earth was a fat loomy Mould, that the Herbage was strong, that the Grass, in some Places, was very rank and good, being as high as our Mid-Thigh; and that the Air was neither very Hot, nor as we believe, very Cold; we made an Experiment of the Fruitfulness of the Soil, for we took some white Pease, and digging the Ground up with a Spade, we sow'd some, and before we went away, we saw them come out of the Ground again, which was in about nine Days.

We made Signs to the People, that they should let them grow, and that if they gather'd them, they were good to eat: We also Sow'd some English Wheat, and let them know, as

well as we could, what the Use of them both was. But I make no doubt, but they have been better acquainted with both by this time, by an Occasion which follow'd.

Our Men were so fond of this Place, and so pleas'd with the Temper of the People, the Fruitfulness of the Soil, and Agreeableness of the Climate; that about 20 of them offer'd me, if I would give them my Word to come again, or send them to them to relive and supply them with Necessaries, they would go on Shore, and begin a Colony, and live all their Days there. Nay after this, their Number came up to 33: Or, they offer'd, that if I would give them the Sloop, and leave with them a Quantity of Goods, especially of such Toys as they knew would oblige the People to use them well, they would stay at all Hazards, not doubting, as they told me, but they should come to England again at last, with the Sloop full of Gold.

I was not very willing to encourage either of these Proposals, because, as I told them, I might perhaps find a Place as fit to settle a Colony in, before we came Home, which was not at such an excessive Distance from England, so that it was scarce possible ever to relieve them. This satisfied them pretty well, and they were Content to give over the Project; and yet, at last, which was more preposterous than all the rest, five of our Men and a Boy, ran away from us and went on Shore, and what Sort of Life they led, or how

they

they manage we are scarce ever likely to know, for they are too far off to enquire after them again: They took a small Yaul with them, and it seems had furnish'd themselves privately with some necessary Things, especially Tools, a Grind-Stone, a Barrel of Powder, some Pease, some Wheat, and some Barley; so than it seems, they are resolv'd to plant there; I confess I pittied them, and when I had search'd for them, and could not find them, I caused a Letter to be written to them, and fixt it up upon a Post at the Place where our Ship careen'd; and another on the South Side, to tell them, that in such a certain Place, I had left other Necessaries for them, which I did, made up in a large Case of Boards or Planks, and cover'd with Boards like a Shed.

Here I left them Hammocks for Lodging; all Sorts of Tools for building them a House, Spades, Shovels, Pick Axes, an Ax, two Saws; with Cloaths, Shoes, Stockings, Hats, Shirts, and in a Word, every thing that I could think of for their Use; and a large Box of Toys, Beads &c. to oblige the Trade with the Natives.

One of our Men, who they had made privy to their Design, but made him promise not to reveal it, 'till they were gone; had told them, that he would persuade me if he could, to leave them a farther Supply; and bid them come to the Place, after the Ships were gone; and that they should find Directions left for them, on a Piece of a Board, or a Letter from him, set upon a Post. Thus they were well furnish'd with all Things for immediate living.

I made no doubt, but they came to find these Things, and since they had a Mind to make Tryal of a wild retir'd Life, they might shift very well. Nor would they want any thing but English Women, to raise a new Nation of English People, in a Part of the World, that belongs neither to Europe, Asia, Africa, or America. I also left each of them another Gun, a Cutlass, and a Horn for Powder; and I left two Barrels of fine Powder, and two Pigs of Lead for Shot, in another Chest by itself.

I doubt not, but the Natives will bestow Wives upon them, but what Sort of a Posterity they would make, I cannot foresee: For I don't find by Enquiry, that the Fellows had any great Store of Knowledge or Religion in them, being all Madagascar Men, as we call'd them; that is to say, Pyrates and Rogues: So that for ought I know, there may be a Generation of English Heathens in an Age or two more; tho' I left them five Bibles, and six or seven Prayer Books, and good Books of several Sorts; that they might not want Instruction, if they thought fit to make Use of it, for themselves or their Progeny.

It is true, this is a Country that is most remote from us, of any in the yet discover'd World, and consequently, it would be suggested as unprofitable to our Commerce; but I have something to allege in its Defence, which will prove it to be infinitely more advantageous to England, than any of our East-India Trade can be, or then can be pretended for it. The Reason is plain in a few Words:
Our

Our East India Trade is carried on, or most Part of it by an Exportation of Bullion in Specie; and a Return of foreign Manufactures or Produce; and most of these Manufactures also, either trifling and unnecessary in themselves; or such as are injurious to our own Manufactures. The solid Goods brought from India, which may be said to be necessary to us, and worth sending our Money for, are but few; for Example:

I. The Returns, which I reckon trifling and unnecessary, are, such as China Ware, Coffee, Tea, Japan Works, Pictures, Fans, Skreens, &c.

II. The Returns, that are injurious to our Manufactures, or Growth of our own Country; are printed Callicoes, Chints, wrought Silks, Stuffs of Herba and Barks, Block-Tin, Sugar, Cotton, Arrcak, Copper, Indico.

III. The necessary or useful Things are Pepper, Salt Petre, dying Woods and dying Earths, Drugs, Lacks, such as Shel-lacks, Stick-lack, &c. Diamonds, and some Pearl, and raw Silk.

For all these we carry nothing or very little but Money; the innumerable Nations of the Indies, China, &c. despising our Manufactures, and filling us with their own.

On the contrary, the People in the Southern unknown Countries, being first of all very numerous, and

living in a temperate Climate, which requires cloathing, and having no Manufactures, or Materials for Manufactures of their own, would consequently take off a very great Quantity of English Woollen-Manufactures, especially when civiliz'd by our dwelling among them, and taught the Manner of Cloathing themselves for their Ease and Convenience; and in Return for these Manufactures, 'tis evident, we should have Gold in Specie, and perhaps Spices; the best Merchandize and Return in the World.

I need say no more to excite adventurous Heads to search out a Country, by which such an Improvement might be made, and which would be such an Increase of, or Addition to the Wealth and Commerce of our Country.

Nor can it be objected here, that this Nook of the Country may not easily be found by any one but by us, that have been there before, and perhaps not by us again exactly; for not to enter into our Journal of Observations for their Directions, I lay it down as a Foundation; that whoever, sailing over the South-Seas, keeps a started Distance from the Tropick to the Latitude of 56, to 60 Degrees, and steers Eastward towards the Streights of Magellan, shall never fail to discover new Worlds, new Nations, and new inexhaustible Funds of Wealth and Commerce, such as never were yet known to the Merchants of Europe.

This the the true Ocean call'd the South-Sea; that Part that we corruptly

ruptly call so, can be so in no Geographical Account, or by any Rule but by the meer Imposition of Custom, it being only originally call'd so, because they that sail'd to it, were oblig'd to go round the Southernmost Part of America to come into it; whereas it ought indeed to be call'd the West-Sea, as it lies on the West Side of America, and washes the Western Shore of that great Continent for near 8000 Miles in length; to wit, from 66 Degrees South of the Line, to 70 Degrees North; and how much farther, we know not: On this Account, I think, it ought to be call'd the American Ocean, rather than with such Impropriety the South-Sea.

But this Part of the World where we were, may rightly be call'd the South-Sea, by Way of Distinction, as it extends from India, round the Globe, to India again; and lies all South of the Line (even for ought we know) to the very South Pole, and which, except some Interposition of Land, whether Islands or Continent, really surround the South Pole.

We were now in the very Center or Middle of the South-Sea; being, as I have said, in the Latitude 34 Degrees 20 Minutes; but having had such good Success in our Inquiry, or search after new Continents, I resolv'd to Steer to the S. and S. E. as far, as till we should be interrupted by Land or Ice, determining to search this unknown Part of the Globe, as far as Nature would permit, that I might be able to give some Account to my Employers, and some Light to

other People that might come that Way, whether by Accident or by Design.

We had spent 26 Days in this Place, as well in Repairing our Brigantine and Careening, and trimming our Ship, that we had not been so long, but that we did not resolve to careen our Ships, till we had spent 10 Days about the Brigantine, and then we found more Work to do to the Sheathing of the Madagascar Ship than we expected.

We stor'd ourselves here with fresh Provisions and Water, but got nothing that we could call a Store, except the Flesh of about 30 Deer, which we dry'd in the Sun, and which eat indifferent well afterwards, but not extraordinary.

We sail'd again the 26 Day after we came in, having a fair Wind at N. and N. N. W. and a fresh Gale, which held us five Days without any Intermision; in which Time, running away S. S. E. we reach'd the former Latitude, were we had been; and meeting with nothing remarkable, we steer'd a little farther to the Eastward; but keeping a Southerly Course still, 'till we came into the Latitude of 41; and then going due East, with the Wind at N. and by W. we reckon'd our Meridian Distance from the Ladrões, to be 50 Degrees and an half.

In all this run we saw no Land, so we hall'd two Points more Southerly, and went on for six or seven Days more, when one of our Men on the round Top, cry'd Land. It was a clear
fine

fine Morning, and the Land he spy'd, being very high, it was found to be 16 Leagues Distance; and the Wind slackning, we could not get in that Night, so we lay by till Morning; when being fair with the Land, we hoisted our Boat to go and found the Shore, as usual. They row'd in close with the Shore, and a little Cove; where there was good riding, but very deep Water; being no less than 60 Fathom within Cables Length of the Shore.

We went in however, and after we were moor'd, sent our Boat on Shore to look for Water, and what else the Country afforded. Our Men found Water, and a good Sort of Country, but saw no Inhabitants; and upon coasting a little both Ways on the Shore, they found it to be an Island, and without People; but found that about three Leagues off to the Southward, there seem'd to be a Terra Firma, or Continent of Land; where, it was more likely, we should make some Discovery.

The next Day we fill'd Water again, and Shot some Ducks; and the Day after weigh'd, and stood over for the Main, as we thought it to be; here using the same Caution as we always had done, viz, of sounding the Coast, we found a bold Shore, and very good Anchor hold, at 26 to 30 Fathom.

When we came on Shore here, we found People, but of a quite different Condition, from those we had met with before; being wild, furious, and untractable; surpriz'd at the Sight of us, but not frighted; preparing for Battle, not

for Trade; and no sooner were we on Shore, but they saluted us with their Bows and Arrows. We made Signals of Truce to them, but they did not understand us; and we know not what to offer them more, but the Muzzels of our Muskets; for we were resolv'd to see, what Sort of Folks they were, either by fair Means or foul.

The first Time therefore, that they shot at our Men with their Bows and Arrows, we return'd the Salute with our Musket-Ball, and kill'd two of their best Archers. We could easily perceive, that the Noise of our Pieces terrify'd them; and the two Men being kill'd, they knew not how, or with what, perfectly astonish'd them; so that they ran, as it were, clean out of the Country; that is to say, clean out of our Reach; for we could never set our Eyes upon any of them after it. We coasted this Point also, according to our usual Customs; and to our great Surprise, found it was an Island too, tho' a large one; and that the main Land lay still more to the Southward, about six Leagues Distance; so we resolv'd to look out farther, and accordingly set Sail the next Day, and anchor'd under the Shore of this last Land, which, we were perswaded, was really the Main.

We went on Shore here peaceably, for we neither saw any People, or the Appearance of any: But a charming pleasant Valley, of about 10 or 11 Miles long, and five or six Miles broad; and then it was surrounded with Mountains, which reach'd the the full Length; running parallel with the Valley, and closing it in to the Sea at both Ends; so that it was a natural Park; having the Sea on the North Side, and the Mountains in a Semi-

Semi-circle round all the rest of it. These Hills were so high, and the Ways so untrod and so steep, that our Men, who were curious enough to have climb'd to the Top of them, could find no Way, that was practicable to get up; and so after two or three Attempts gave it over.

In this Vale we found Abundance of Deer, and Abundance of the same Kind of Sheep, which I mention'd lately. We kill'd as many of both, as we had Occasion for; and finding nothing here worth our staying any longer for, except that we saw something like wild Rice growing here, we weigh'd after three Days, and stood away still to the South.

We had not sail'd above two Days with little Wind, and an easy Sail, but we perceiv'd this was an Island, tho' it must be a large one; for by our Account, we sail'd near 150 Miles along the Shore of it; and we found the South Part, a flat pleasant Country enough; and our Men said, they saw People upon it, on the South Side; but we went not on Shore there any more.

Steering due South from hence in Quest of the main Land, we went on 11 Days more, and saw nothing significant; and upon a fair Observation, I found, we were in the Latitude of 47 Degrees and eight Minutes South; then I alter'd my Course a little to the Eastward, finding no Land, and the Weather very cold, and going on with a fresh Gale at S. S. W. for four Days, we made Land again; but it was now to the E. N. E. so that we were goten, as we may say, beyond it.

We fell in with this Land in the Evening, so that it was not perceiv'd

till we was within half a league of it, which very much alarm'd us; the Land being low, and having found our Error, we brought two, and stood off and on till Morning, when we saw the Shore lie as it were under our Larboard-bow, within a Mile and a Quarter Distance; the Land low, but the Sea deep and soft Ground. We came to an Anchor immediately, and sent our Shallop to sound the Shore, who found very good Riding in a little Bay, under the Shelter of two Points of Land, one of which made a Kind of Hook, under which we lay secure from all Winds that could blow, in 17 Fathom good Ground. Here we had a good Observation, and found ourselves in the Latitude of 50 Degrees 21 Minutes. Our next Work was to find Water, and our Boats going a-shore, found plenty of good Water, and some Cattle; but told us they could give no Account what they were, or what they were like. In searching this Coast, we soon found this was an Island also about a 11 Leagues in Length from N. W. to S. E. what Breadth we could not tell. Our Men also, saw some Signs of Inhabitants; the next Day six Men appear'd at a Distance, but would take Notice of no Signals, and fled as soon our Men advanc'd. Our People went up to the Place where they lay, and found they had had a Fire of some dry Wood; that they had lain there, as they suppos'd, all Night, tho' without Covering; they found two Pieces of old ragged Skins of Deer, which look'd as if worn out by some that had used them for Cloathing; one Pieces of a Skin of some other Creature which had been

been roll'd up into a Cap for the Head, and a Couple of Arrows of about four Foot long, very thick, and made of a hard and heavy Wood; so they must have very large and strong Bows to shoot such Arrows, and consequently must be Men of an uncommon Strength.

Our Men wander'd about the Country here three or four Days, with less Caution, than the Nature of the Thing requir'd; for they were not among a People of an innocent inoffensive Temper here, as before, but among a wild untractable Nation; that perhaps had never seen Creatures in their own Likeness before; and had no Thoughts of themselves, but of being kill'd and destroy'd; and consequently had no Thoughts of them they had seen, but as of Enemies, whom they must either destroy, if they were able, or escape from them, if they were not. However, we got no Harm; neither would the Natives ever appear, to accept any Kindnesses from us.

We had no Business here, after we found what Sort of people they were, who inhabited this Place. So soon as we had taken in fresh Water, and catch'd some Fish, of which we found good Store, in the Harbour or Bay where we rode, we prepar'd to be gone. Here we found the first Oysters, that we ever saw in the South-Seas; and as our Men found them but the Day before we were to sail, they made great Intreaty to me, to let them stay one Day to get a Quantity on Board; they being very refreshing, as well as nourishing, to our Men:

But I was more easily prevail'd with to stay, when Captain Merlotte brought me out of one Oyster that he happen'd to open a true Oriental Pearl; so large and so fine, that I sold it, since my Return, for 53 l.

After taking this Oyster, I order'd all our Boats out a Dredging; and in two Day Time so great a Quantity there was, that our Men had taken above 50 Bushels, most of the very large. But we were surpriz'd, you may be sure, when at the opening all these Oysters, we found not one Pearl, small or great, of any Kind whatever; so we concluded, that the other was a lucky Hit only; and that perhaps there might not be any more of that Kind in these Seas.

While we were musing on the Oddness of this Accident, the Boat-twin of the Madagascar Ship, whose Boat's Crew had brought in the great Oyster, in which the Pearl was found, and who had been examining the Matter; came and told me, that it was before they went out a dredging in the Offing; but that their Boat took these Oysters on the West Side of the Island, where they had been shoaring, as they call'd it; that is to say coasting along the Shore, to see if they could find any Thing worth their Labour; but that afterwards the Boats went a dredging in the Mouth of the Bay where we rode; and where finding good Store of Oysters, they had gone no farther.

Upon this Intelligence we order'd all Hands to dredging again, on the West Side of the Island. This

was in a narrow Channel between this Island, and a little Cluster of Islands; which we found together extended West, the Channel, where our Men fish'd, might be about a League over, something better; and the Water above five or seven Fatham deep.

They came home well tir'd, and ill pleas'd, having taken nothing near so many Oysters, as before. But I was much better pleas'd, when in opening them, we found 158 Pearls, of the most Perfect Colour, and of extraordinary Shape and Size; besides double the Number of a less Size, and irregular Shape.

This quicken'd our Diligence, and encourag'd our Men; for I promis'd the Men two Pieces of Eight to each Man above his Pay, if I got any considerable Quantity of Pearl. Upon this they spread themselves among the Islands, and fish'd for a whole Week; and I got such a Quantity of Pearl, as made it very well worth our while; and besides that, I had Reason to believe, the Men, at least the Officers, who went with them, conceal'd a considerable Quantity among themselves; which, however, I did not think fit to enquire very strictly after at that Time.

Had we been nearer home, and not at so very great an Expence as three Ships, and so many Men at Victuals and Wages; or had we been, where we might have left one of our Vessels to fish, and have come to them again; we would not have given it over, while there had been an Oyster left in the Sea; or at least,

that we could come at: But as Things stood, I resolv'd to give it over and put to Sea.

But when I was just given Orders, Captain Merlotte came to me, and told me, that all the Officers in the three Ships had join'd together to make an humble Petition to me; which was, that I would give them one Day to fish for themselves; that the Men had promis'd, if I would consent they would consent to Work for them Gratis; and they promis'd, if they gain'd any thing considerable, they would account for as much out of their Wages, as should defray the Ships Expence, Victuals, and Wages, for the Day.

This was so small a Request, that I readily consented to it; and told them, I would give them three Days provided, they were willing to give the Men a Largeess, as I had done, in Proportion to their Gain. This they agreed to, and to work they went; but whether it was that the Fellows work'd with a better Will, or that the Officers gave them more Liquor, or that they found a new Bank of Oysters, which had not been found out before, but so it was, that the Officers got as many Pearls, some of extraordinary Size and Beauty, as they afterwards sold when they came to Peru, for 3217 Pieces of Eight.

When they had done this, I told them it was but meet, that as they had made so good a Purchase for themselves by the Labour of the Men, the Men shou'd have the Consideration which I had propos'd to them. But
now

now I would make another Consideration with them. That we would stay three Days more, and whatever was catch'd in these three Days, should be shar'd among the Men at the first Port we came at, where they could be sold; that the Men who had now been out so long, might have something to buy Clothes and Liquors, without anticipating their Wages: But then I made a Condition with the Men too, viz. that whatever was taken, they should deposite it in my Hands, and with the joint Trust of three Men of their own choosing, one out of each Ship, and that we would sell the Pearl, and I should divide the Money among them equally, that so there might be no Quarrelling or Discontent, and that none of them shou'd play any Part of it away: These Engagements they all came willingly into, and away they went dredging, relieving one another punctually; so that in the whole three Days, every Man work'd an equal Share of Hours with the rest.

But the poor Men had not so good Luck for themselves, as they had for their Officers. However, they got a considerable Quantity, and some very fine ones; among the rest, they had two, in the exact Shape of a Pear, and very exactly match'd; and these they would needs make me a Present of, because I had been so kind to them, to make the Proposal for them: I would have paid for them 200 Pieces of Eight, but One and all, they would not be paid; and would certainly have been very much affronted, if I had not accepted of them; and yet the Success of the Men was not so small, but

joyn'd with the two Pieces of Eight a Man, which I allow'd them on the Ships Account, and the like Allowance the Officers made them, and the Produce of their own Purchase they divided afterwards, about 15 Pieces of Eight a Man, which was a great Encouragement to them.

Thus they spent in the whole, near three weeks here, and call'd these the *Pearl-Islands*, tho' we had given no Names to any Places before; we were the more surpriz'd with this unexpected Booty, because, we all thought it very unusual, to find Pearl of so excellent a Kind in such a Latitude as that of 46, to 50; but it seems there are Riches yet unknown in those Parts of the World, where they had never been yet expected; and I have been told, by those who pretended to give a Reason for it, that if there was any Land directly under the Poles, either South or North, there would be found Gold of a Fineness more than Double to any that was ever yet found in the World. And this is the Reason, they say, why the Magnetick Influence, directs to the Poles, that being the Center of the most pure Metals; and why the Needle, touch'd with the Load-Stone, or Magnet, always points to the North or South Pole. But I do not recommend this as a Certainty, because, 'tis evident, no Demonstration could ever be arriv'd to, nor could any Creature reach to that particular Spot of Land under the Pole, if such there should be, those Lands being surrounded with Mountains of Snow, and frozen Seas which never Thaw, and are utterly unpassible, either for Ships or Men.

But

But to return to our Voyage, having thus spent, as I have said, three Weeks on this unexpected Expedition; we set Sail, and as I was almost satisfy'd with the Discoveries we had made, I was for bending my Courle Due East, and so directly for the South Part of America; but the Wind now blowing for the N. W. and good Weather, I took the Occasion, as a favourable Summons, to keep still on Southing as well as East, till we came into the Latitude of 56; when our Men who had been all along, a Warm-Weather Voyage, began to be pinch'd very much with the Cold, and particularly complain'd, that they had not Cloaths sufficient for in.

But they were brought to be content by Force; for the Wind continuing at N. and N. W. and blowing very hard, we were oblig'd to keep on our Course farther South indeed, than I ever intend'd; and one of our Men swore we should be driven to the South Pole; indeed, we rather ran afore it, then kept our Course; and in this Run we suffered the extreamest Cold, tho' a Northerly Wind, as a Southerly is here; but it was attended with Rain or Snow, and both freezing violently; at length, one of our Men cry'd out Land, and our Men began to rejoice; but I was quite of a different Opinion, and my Fears were but too just; for as soon as ever he cry'd Land, and that I ask'd him in what Quarter, and he answer'd Due South, which was almost right a Head, I bid wear the Ship, and put her about immediately, not doubting, but instead of Land, I should find it a Mountain of Ice, and so it was; and it was happy for us that we had a stout Ship under us, for it blew a Fret of Wind.

However, the Ship came very well about, tho' when she fill'd again, we found the Ice not half a League Distance under our Stern.

As I happen'd to be the headmost Ship, I fir'd two Guns to give Notice to our other Vessels, for that was our Signal to come about, but that which was very uneasy to me, the Weather was Hazy, and they were both out of Sight; which was the first Time that we lost Sight of one another in those Seas: However, being both to Windward, and within Hearing of my Guns, they took the Warning, and came about with more Leasure, and less Hazard than I had done.

I stood away now to the Eastward, firing Guns continually, that they might know which way to follow; and they answer'd me duly, to let me know that they heard me.

It was our great good Hap also, that it was Day when we escap'd this Danger; in the Afternoon the Wind abated, and the Weather clear'd up: We then call'd a Council, and resolv'd to go on farther South, being then in the Latitude of sixty seven South, which I suppose, is the farthest Southern Latitude that any European Ship ever say in those Seas.

That Night it froze extreamely hard, and the Wind veering to the S. W. it was the severest Cold that ever I felt in my Life; a Barrel or Cask of Water, which stood on the Deck, froze intirely in one Night into one Lump, and our Cooper, knocking off the Hoops from the Cask, took it to Pieces, and the Barrel of Ice stood by itself, in the true Shape of the Vessel it had been in. This Wind was however favourable to our Deliverance,

rance, for we stood away now N. E. and N. E. by N. making a fresh Way with a fair Wind.

We made no more Land, till we came into the Latitude of 62, when we saw some Islands at a great Distance, on both Side of us; we believed them to be Islands, because we saw many of them, with large Openings between. But we were all so willing to get into a warmer Climate, that we did not incline to put in any where, till having run thus 15 Days, and the Wind still holding Southerly with small Alteration and clear Weather. We could easily perceive the Climate alter'd, and the Weather grew milder; and here taking an Observation, I found myself in the Latitude of 50 and an half, and that our Meridian-Distance from the Ladrões West, was 87 Degrees, being almost one Sem-Idiameter of the Globe, so that I could not be far from the Coast of America, which was my next Design, and indeed the chief Design of the whole Voyage.

On this Expectation, I chang'd my Course a little and went away N. by E. till by an Observation, I found myself in 47 Degrees seven Minutes, and then standing away East, for about 11 Days more, we made the Tops of the Andes, the great Mountains of Chili in South-America to our great Joy and Satisfaction, tho' at a very great Distance.

We found our Distance from the Shore, not less than 20 Leagues, the

Mountains, being of very high, and our next Business was to consider, what Part of the Andes it must be, and to what Port we should direct ourselves first. Upon the whole, we found we were too much to the South still, and resolv'd to make directly for the River or Port of Valdivia or Baldivia, call it which you please, in the Latitude of 40 Degrees; so we stood away to the North: The next Day, Pacifick quiet Sea, as they call'd it, shew'd us a very frowning rough Countenance, and prov'd the very Extreame of a contrary Disposition. For it blew a Storm of Wind at E by S. and drove us off the Coast again, but it abated again for a Day or two; and then for six Days together, it blew excessive hard, almost all at East; so that I found no possibility of getting into the Shore: And besides, I found that the Winds came off that Mountainous Country in Squalls; and that the nearer we came to the Hills, the Gusts were the more violent: So I resolv'd to run for the Island of Juan Ferandes to refresh ourselves there until the Weather was settled; and besides we wanted fresh Water very much.

The little that the Wind stood Southerly help'd me in this Run, and we came in 5 Days more fair with the Island, to our great Joy, and brought all our Ships to an Anchor as near the watering Place as is usual, where we rode easy, tho' the Wind continued to blow very hard; and being, I say, now about the Middle of our Voyage, I shall break off my Account here, as of the first Part of my Work, and begin again at our Departure from hence.

It

It is true, we had got over much the greater Run, as to Length of Way; but the most important Part of our Voyage was yet to come, and we had no inconsiderable Length to run neither, for as we proposed to sail North, the Height of Panama, in the Latitude of nine Degrees North, and back again by Cape Horn, in the Latitude of, perhaps 60 Degrees South; those three added to the South, and that we were now in 40 Degrees South; those three added to the Run, from Cape Horn home to England, made a prodigious Length, as you will see by this following Account; in which, also the Meridian Distances are not at all reckoned, tho' those also are very great.

	Deg.
From Juan Fernando to the Line	30
From the Line to Panama.	9
From Panama to Cape Horn, including the Distance we take in going round.	60
From Cape Horn to the Line again in the North Seas.	60
From the Line to Eng- land.	51

 210

N. B. Only you must deduct from this Account, the Distance from Lima to Panama,

because we did not go up to Panama, as we intended to do.

By this Account we had almost 30 Degrees to run more than the Diameter of the Globe, besides our Distance West, where we then were, from the Meridian of England, whither we were to go; which, if exactly calculated, is above 70 Degrees, take it from the Island of Juan Fernandes.

But to return a little to our Stay in this Place, for that belongs to this Part of my Account, and of which I must make a few short Observations.

It was scarce possible to restrain English Men, after so long beating the Sea, from going on Shore, when they came to such a Place of Refreshment as this; nor indeed was it reasonable to restrain them, considering how we all might be supposed to stand in need of Refreshment; and considering that here was no Length of Ground for the Men to wander in, no Liquor to come at to distract them with their Excess; and, which was still more, no Women to disorder or debauch them: We all knew their chief Exercise would be hunting Goats for their Subsistence; and we knew also, that, however they wanted the Benefit of fresh Provision, they must work hard to catch it, before they could taste the Sweet of it. Upon these Considerations, I say, our Ships being well moor'd, and riding safe, we restrain'd none of them, except a due Number to take Care of each Ship, and those were taken out by Lot, and then had their turn also to go on Shore some Days

Days afterwards, and, in the mean Time, had both fresh Water and fresh Meat sent them immediately, and that in sufficient Quantity, to their Satisfaction. As soon as we were on Shore, and look'd about us, we began first with getting some fresh Water for we greatly wanted it, then carry'd a small Cask of Arrack on Shore I made a Quantity of it to be put into a whole Butt of Water before I let our Men drink a Drop; to correcting a little the Chilness of the Water, because I knew they would drink an immoderate Quantity and endanger their Healths: And the Effect answer'd my Care; for those who drank at the Spring, where they took in the Water, before I got this Butt fill'd, and before the Arrack was put into it, fell into Swooning and faint Sweats, having gorg'd themselves too much with the cool Water; and two or three, I thought, would have dy'd; but our Surgeons took such Care of them, that they recover'd.

While this was doing, others cut down Branches of Trees, and built us two large Booths, and five or six smaller; and we made two Tents with some old Sails: And thus we encamped, as if we had been to take up our Dwelling, and intended to People the Island.

At the same Time, others of our Men began to look out for Goats, for you may believe, we all long'd for a little fresh Meat. They were a little too hasty at their Work at first; for firing among the first Goats they came at, when there was but a few Men together, they frighted the Crea-

tures, and they ran all away into Holes, and among the Rocks and Places where we could not find them: So that for that Day they made little of it. However, sending for more Firemen, they made shift to bring in 17 Goats the same Day; whereof we sent five on board the Ships, and feasted with the rest on Shore. But the next Day the Men went to work in another Manner, and with better Conduct; for as we had Hands enough, and Fire-arms enough; they spread themselves so far, that they, as it were, surrounded the Creatures; and to driving them out of their Fastnesses and Retreats, they had no Occasion to shoot, for the Goats could not get from them, and they took them every where with their Hands, except some of the old He-goats, which were so surly, that they would stand at Bay, and rise at them, and would not be taken; and these, as being old also, and as they thought, good for nothing, they let go.

In short, so many of our Men went on Shore, and these divided themselves into so many little Parties, and ply'd their Work so hard, and had such good Luck, that I told them, it look'd as if they had made a general Massacre of the Goats, rather than a Hunting.

Our Men also might be said, not to refresh themselves, but to feast themselves here with fresh Provisions; for, tho' we stay'd but 13 Days, yet we kill'd 370 Goats; and our Men who were on Board, were very merrily employ'd, I assure you; for they might be said to do very little but roast and stew, and broil and fry from Morning

Morning to Night; it was indeed an exceeding Supply to them, for they had been extreamly fatigu'd with the last Part of their Voyage, and had had no fresh Provisions for six Weeks before.

This made them hunt the Goats with the more Eagerness; and indeed, they surrounded them so dexterously, and follow'd them so nimbly, that, notwithstanding the Difficulties of the Rocks, yet the Goats could hardly ever escape them. Here our Men found also very good Fish, and some few Tortoises, or Turtles, as the Seamen call them; but they valued them not, when they had such plenty of Venison. Also they found some very good Herbs in the Island, which they boil'd with the Goat's Flesh, and which made their Broth very savory and comfortable, and withal very healing and good against the Scurvy, which in those Climates Englishmen are very subject to.

We were now come to the Month of April 1715, having spent almost eight Months in this trafficking wandering Voyage, from Manilla hither. And whoever shall follow the same, or a like Track, if ever such a Thing shall happen, will do well to make a Year of it, and may find it very well worth while.

I doubt not, but there are many undiscover'd Parts of Land to the West, and to the South also; of the first Shore, of which I mention'd, that we stay'd trafficking for little Bits of Gold. And tho' it is true, that such a Traffick, as I have given

an Account of, is very advantageous in itself, and worth while to look for; especially after having had a good Market for an outward bound European Cargo, according to the Patern of ours at the Phillipines; and which, by the Way, they need not miss, I say, as this Trade for Gold would be well worth while, so had we gone the best Way, and then a Course more to the South from Manilla, not going away East to the Ladrons, we shall certainly have fallen in with a Country from the Coast of New Guiney, where we might have found Plenty of Spices, as well as of Gold.

For why should we not be allow'd to suppose, that the Country on the same Continent, and in the same Latitude, should produce the same Growth; especially considering them situated, as it may be call'd, in the Neighbourhood of one another.

Had we then proceeded this Way, no Question, but we might have fix'd on some Place for a Settlement, either English or French; whence a Correspondence being establish'd with Europe, either by Cape Horn East, or the Cape De Bona Esperance West, as we had thought fit; they might have found as great a Production of the Nutmegs, and the Cloves, as at Benda, and Ternate, or have made those Productions have been planted there for the future, where, no doubt, they would grow and thrive as well, as they do now in the Molucco's.

But we spun out too much Time for the Business we did; and tho' we might, as above, discover new Places, and get very well too; yet we did nothing, in
Comparison

Comparison of what we might be suppos'd to do, had we made the Discovery more our Business.

I cannot doubt also, but that when I stood away South, it was too late; for had I stood into the Latitude of 67 at first as I did afterwards, I have Reason to believe, that those Islands, which we call the Molucco's, and which lie so thick, and for so great an Extent, go on yet farther, and it is scarce to be imagin'd, that they break off just with Gilloto.

This I call a mistake in me; namely, that I stood away East from the Phillipines to the Ladrones, before I had gone any Length to the South.

But to come to the Course set down in this Work, namely, S. E. and by E. from the said Ladrones, the Place I have taken Notice of, as these, do not, in my Opinion, appear to be inconsiderable, and of no Value; so had we search'd farther into them, I doubt not, but there are greater Things to be discover'd; and perhaps, a much greater Extent of Land also. For as I have but just as it were, describ'd the Shell, having made no search after the Cernel; it is more than probable, that within the Country, there might be greater Discoveries made, of immense Value too. For even as I have observ'd several Times, whenever we found any People that had Gold, and ask'd them, as well as by Signs we could make them understand, they always pointed to Rivers, and the Mountains, which lay farther up the Country, and which we never made any discovery of; having little in our View, but the

getting of what little Share of Gold the Poor People had about them. Whereas had we taken a Possession of the Place, and left a Number of Men sufficient to support themselves, in making a farther Search; I cannot doubt, but that there must be a great deal of that, of which the unactive Indians had gotten but a little.

Nor had we any skilful Men among us, to view the Face of the Earth; and see what Treasure of choice Vegetables might be there. We had indeed six very good Surgeons; and one of them, who we took in among the Madagaicar Men, was a Man of very great Reading, and Judgment: But he acknowleg'd, he had no Skill in Botannicks, having never made it his Study.

But to tell the Truth, our Doctors themselves, so we call the Surgeons at Sea, were so taken up in the Traffick for Gold, that they had no Leisure to think of any Thing else. They did indeed pick up some Shells, and some strange figur'd Skeletons of Fishes, and small Beasts, and other Things, which they esteem'd as Rarities: But they never went a Simpling, as we call it; or to enquire, what the Earth brought forth that was a rare, and not to be found any where else.

I think likewise, 'tis worth observing how the People we met with, where 'tis probable, no Ships, much less European Ships, had ever been; and where they had never convers'd with Enemies, or with Nations accustomed to steal and plunder; I say, the People who liv'd thus, had no Fire, no Rage in their Looks; no jealous

jealous Fears of Strangers doing them Harm; and consequently no Desire to do Harm to others. They had Bows and Arrows indeed, but it was rather to kill the Deer and Fowls, and to provide themselves Food, than to offend their Enemies; for they had none.

When therefore moving from thence, we came to other and different Nations, who were ravenous and mischievous, treacherous and fierce, we concluded, they had convers'd with other Nations; either by going to them or their Vessels coming there. And to confirm me in this Opinion, I found, these fierce false Indians had Cannoes and Boats; some of one Kind, and some of another; by which perhaps, they convers'd with the Islands, or other Nations; by which they had several Occasions to be upon their Guard; and learn'd the treacherous and cruel Part from others; which Nature gave them no Ideas of before.

As the Natives of these Places were tractable and courteous, so they would be made easily subservient and assistant to any European Nation that would come to make Settlements among them; especially, if those European Nations used them with Humanity and Courtesy; for I have made it a general Observation concerning the natural Disposition of all the Savage Nations that ever I met with: That if they are once really oblig'd, they will be always very faithful.

But it is our People, I mean the Europeans, breaking Faith with them,

that first teaches them Ingratitude; and injures them to treat their new Comers with Breach of Faith, and with Cruelty, and Barbarity. If you once win them by Kindness, and doing them good, I mean at first, before they are taught to be Rogues by Example, they will generally be honest, and be kind also to the utmost of their Power.

It is to be observ'd, that it has been the Opinion of all the Sailors, who have navigated those Parts of the World, that farther South there has been great Tracts of undiscover'd Land; and some have told us, they have seen them, and have call'd them by such and such Names; as particularly the Isles of Solomon, of which yet, we can read of No-body that ever went on Shore on them, or that could give any Account of them, except such as are Romantick, and not to be depended upon.

But what has been the Reason why we have hitherto had nothing but Geulles made at those Things, and that all that has been said of such Lands, has been imperfect? The Reason, if I may speak my Opinion, has been, because it is such a prodigious Run from the Coast of *America* to the Islands of the *Ladrones*, that the few People who have perform'd it, never durst venture to go out of the Way of the Trade Winds, lest they should not be able to subsist for want of Water and Provisions; and this is particularly the Case in the Voyage from the Coast of *America* only.

Whereas, to go the Way which I have mark'd out, had we a Necessity, and

and that there was no Land to be found to the South of the Tropick, for a Supply of Provisions and fresh Water, it was evident we could have gone back again from one Place to another, and have been constantly supplied; and this make it certain also, that it cannot be reasonably undertaken by a Ship going from the East, I mean the Coast of America, to the West: But from the West, viz. the Spice Islands to America West, it may be adventur'd with Ease, as you see.

It is true, That William Cornelius Van Schouton and Francis la Mair, who first found the Passage into the South-Seas by Cape Horn, and not to pass the Straights of Magellan; I say, they did keep to the Southward of the Tropick, and pass, in Part, the same Way I have here given an Account of, as by their Journals, which I have by me at this Time, is apparent.

And it is as true also, that they did meet with many Islands and unknown Shores in those Seas, where they got Refreshment, especially fresh Water: Perhaps some of the Places were the same I have describ'd in this Voyage; but why they never pursued that Discovery, or mark'd those Islands and Places they got Refreshments at, so that others, in Quest of Business, might have touch'd at them, and have receiv'd the like Benefit, that I can give no Account of.

I cannot help being of Opinion, let our Mapmakers place them where they will, that those Islands, where so successfully fish'd for Oysters, or rather for Pearl, are the same which the an-

tient Geographers have call'd Solomon's Islands; and tho' they are so far South, the Riches of them may not be the less; nor are they more out of the Way. On the contrary, they directly in the Track which our Navigators, would take, if they thought fit either to go or come between Europe and the East-Indies, seeing they came about Cape Horn, seldom go less South than the Latitude of 63 to 64 Degrees; and these Islands, as I have said, lie in the Latitude of 40 to 48 South, and extend themselves near 160 Leagues in Breadth from North to South.

Without doubt, those Islands would make a very noble Settlement, in Order to victual and relieve the European Merchants, in so long a Run as they have to make; and when this Trade came to be more frequented, the Calling of those Ships there would enrich the Islands, as the English at St. Hellena are enriched by the refreshing which the East-India Ships find, that meet there.

But to return to our present Situation, at St. Juan Fernando; the refreshment which our Men found here, greatly encourag'd and reviv'd them; and the Broths and Stewings which we made of the Goats Flesh which we kill'd there, than which, nothing could be wholesomer, restor'd all our sick Men; so that we lost but two Men in our whole Passage from the West-Indies; and had lost but eight Men in our whole Voyage from England, except I should reckon those five Men and a Boy to be lost, which run away from us in the Country among the Indians, as I have already related.

I should have added, that we careen'd and clean'd our Ships here, and put ourselves into a Posture for whatever Adventures might happen; for, as I resolv'd upon a trading Voyage upon the Coast of Chili and Peru, and a cruising Voyage also, as it might happen; so, I resolv'd also, to put our Ships into a Condition for both, as Occasion should present.

Our Men were nimble, at this Work especially, having been so well refresh'd and heart'ned up by their extraordinary Supply of fresh Meats, and the Additions of good Broths and Soups which they fed on every Day in the Island, and with which, they were supplied without any Manner of Limitation, all the while they were at Work.

This, I say, being their Case, they got the Madagascar Ship bail'd down, and her Bottom wash'd and tallow'd, and she was as clean as when she first came off the Stocks, in five Days Time; and she was rigg'd, and all set to rights, and fit for sailing in two more.

The great Ship was not so soon fitted, nor was I in so much haste, for I had a Design in my Head, which I had not yet communicated to any Body, and that was to send the Madagascar Ship a Cruising, as soon as she was fitted up: Accordingly, I say, the fifth Day she was ready, and I manag'd it so, that the Captain of the Madagascar Ship, only, before all the Men, made the Motion as if it had been his own Project, and desired I would let him go and try his Fortune, as he call'd it.

I seem'd loth at first, but he added to his Importunity, that he and all his Crew were willing, if they made any Purchase, it

should be divided among all the Crews, in Shares, according as they were shipped; and if it was Provisions the Captain should buy it half Price, for the Use of the whole, and the Money to be shar'd.

Well, upon hearing his Proposals, which were esteem'd very just, and the Men all agreed, I seem'd to consent, and so had my Orders and Instructions, and Leave to be out 12 Days on his Cruise, and away he went; his Ship was an excellent Sailor, as has been said, and being now a very clean Ship, I thought he might speak with any Thing or get away from any Thing, if he pleased; by the Way, I order'd him to put out none but French Colours.

He cruised a Week without seeing a Sail, and stood in quite to the Spanish Shore in one Place, but that he was wrong in; the eighth Day, giving over all Expectations, he stood off again to Sea, and the next Morning he spy'd a Sail, which was a large Spanish Ship, and which seem'd to stand down directly upon him, which a little check'd his Forwardness; however, he kept on his Course, when the Spaniard seeing him plainer, than, it seems, he had done at first, tack'd and crowding all the Sail he could carry, stood in for the Shore.

The Spaniard was a good Sailor, but our Ship plainly gain'd upon her, and in the Evening came almost up with her; when he saw the Land, tho' at a great Distance, and he was loth to be seen, chacing her, from the Shore; however, he follow'd and Night coming on, the Spaniard chang'd his Course, thinking to get away

away, but as the Moon was just rising, our Men, who resolv'd to keep her in Sight, if possible, perceiv'd her, and stretch'd after her with all the Canvas they could lay on.

This Chale held till about Midnight, when our Ship coming up with her, took her, after a little Dispute; they pretended, at first, to have nothing on Board but Timber, which they were carrying, as they said, to some Port for the Building of Ships: But our Men had the Secret to make the Spaniards confess their Treasure, if they had any; so, that after some hard Words with the Spanish Commander, he confessed he had some Money on Board, which on our Mens Promise of good Usage, he afterwards very honestly deliver'd, and which might amount to about 16000 Pieces of Eight.

But he had what we were very glad of besides, viz. about 200 great Jars of very good Wheat Flower, a large Quantity of Oil, and some Casks of Sweet-Meats, all which was to us very good Prize.

But now our Difficulty was, what we should do with the Ship, and with the Spaniards; and this was so real a Difficulty, that I began often to wish he had not taken her, least her being let go, she should alarm the Country, or if detain'd, discover us all.

It was not above one Day beyond his Orders, that we had the Pleasure of seeing him come into the Road, with his Prize in tow, and the Flour

and Oil was a very good Booty to us; but upon second and better Thoughts, we brought the Spaniards to a fair Treaty, and, which was more difficult, brought all our Men to consent to it. The Case is this, knowing what I propos'd to myself to do, namely, to trade all the Way up the Spanish Coast, and to pass for French Ships, I knew the taken this Spanish Ship would betray us all, unless I resolv'd to sink the Ship and murder all the Men, so I came to this Resolution, namely, to talk with the Spanish Captain, and made Terms with him, which I soon made him very glad of.

First, I pretended to be very angry with the Captain of the Madagascar Ship, and to have put him under Confinement, for having made a Prize with his Catholick Majesty's Subjects, we being Subjects to the King of France, who was in perfect Peace with the King of Spain.

Then I told him, that I would restore him his Ship and all his Money, and as to his Flour and Oil, which the Men had fallen greedily upon, having a Want of it, I would pay him the full Value in Money for it all, and for any other Loss he had sustain'd, only that I would oblige him to lie in the Road at the Island where we were, till we return from our Voyage to Lima, whither we were going to trade, for which lying, I also agreed to pay him Demorage for his Ship, after the Rate of 800 Pieces of Eight per Month, and if I returned not in four Months, he was to be at his Liberty to go.

The

The Captain, who thought himself a Prisoner and undone, you may be-
 sure, would embrace this Offer ; and
 so we secured his Ship till our Re-
 turn, and there we found him very
 honestly at an Anchor, of which in
 its Place.

The End of the First Part.



PART. II.

VOYAGE

ROUND THE

WORLD.

WE were now, as I have said, much about the Middle of our Voyage, at least as I had attended it, and having stor'd ourselves with every thing the Place afforded, we got ready to proceed, for we had, as it were, dwelt here near a Fortnight.

By this Time the Weather was good again, and we stood away to the S. E. for the Port of Baldivia, as above, and reach'd to the Mouth of the Harbour in 12 Days Sail.

I was now to change Faces again, and Captain Merlotte appear'd as Captain, all Things being transacted in his Name, and French Captains were put into the Brigantine, and into the Madagascar Ship also: The first Thing the Captain did, was to send a civil Message to the Spanish Governor, to acquaint him, that being come into those Seas as Friends, under his most Christian Majesty's Commission, and with the King of

Spain's Permission, we desir'd to be treated as Allies, and to be allow'd to take Water or Wood, and to buy such Refreshment as we wanted, for which we would pay ready Money; also we carry'd French Colours, but took not the least Notice of our Intention to trade with them.

We receiv'd a very civil Answer from the Governor, viz. That being the King of France's Subjects, and that they were in Alliance with us, we were very welcome to Wood and Water, and any Provision the Place would afford; and that our Persons should be safe, and in perfect Liberty to go on Shore, but that he could not allow any of our Men to lie on Shore, it being express in his Orders, that he should not permit any Nation, not actually in Commission from the King of Spain, to come on Shore, and stay there, no not one Night; and that this was done to prevent Disorders.

We

We answer'd, That we were content with that Order, seeing we did not desire our Men should go on Shore to stay there, we not being able to answer for any Mis-behaviour, which was frequent among Seamen.

While we continued here, several Spaniards came on Board and visited us, and we often went on Shore on the same Pretence; but our Supra-Cargo, who understood his Business too well not to make use of the Occasion, presently let the Spaniards see, that he had a great Cargo of Goods to dispose of; they as freely took the Hint, and let him know, that they had Money enough to pay for whatever they brought; so they fell to work, and they bought East-India and China Silks, Japan Ware, China Wares, Spice, and something of every thing we had. We knew we should not sell all our Cargo here, nor any extraordinary Quantity; but we knew on the other Hand, that what we did sell here, we should sell 100 l. per Cent. extraordinary: I mean, more than we should sell for at Lima, or any other Ports on that Side, and so we did; for here we sold a Bottle of Arrack for four Pieces of Eight; a Pound of Cloves for five Pieces of Eight, and a Pound of Nutmegs for six Pieces of Eight; and the like of other Things.

They would gladly have purchas'd some European Goods, and especially English Cloath and Bays; but as we had, indeed very few such Things left, so we were not willing they should see them, that they might not have any Suspicion of our being English Men,

and English Ships, which would soon have put an End to all our Commerce.

While we lay here trafficking with the Spaniards, I set some of my Men to work, to converse among the Native Chilians or Indians, as we call them, of the Country, and several things they learn'd of them according to the Instructions which I gave them; for Example; First, I understood by them, That the Country People who did not live among the Spaniards, have a mortal Aversion to them; that it is rivett'd in their Minds by Tradition, from Father to Son, ever since the Wars which had formerly been among them; and that though they did not now carry on those Wars, yet the Animosity remained, and the Pride and cruel haughty Temper of the Spaniards was such still to those of the Country People, who came under their Government, as makes that Aversion continually increase. They let us know, that if any Nation in the World would but come in, and assist them against the Spaniards, and support them in their rising against them, they would soon rid their Hands of the whole Nation. This was to the Purpose, exactly, as to what I wanted to know.

I then ordered a particular Enquiry to be made, whether the Mountains of Andes (which are, indeed prodigious to look at, and so frightful for their Height, that 'tis not to be thought of without some Horror) were in any Place passable? What Country there was beyond them? And whether any of their People had gone over and knew the Passage.

The Indians concur'd with the Spaniards in this (for our Men enquir'd of both) that though the Andes were to be supposed, indeed, to be the highest Mountains in the World, and that, generally speaking, they were unpassible, yet that there had been Passages found by the Vales among the Mountains; where, with fetching several Compasses and Windings, partly on the Hills, and partly in the Valleys, Men went, with a great deal of Ease and Safety, quite through or over, call it as we will, to the other called the East-side, and as often returned again.

Some of the more knowing Indians or Chilians went farther than this, and when our Men enquir'd after the Manner, and Situation and Produce of the Country on the other Side, they told them, that when they pass'd the Mountains from that Part of the Country, on the other Side, they went chiefly to fetch Cattle, and kill Deer, of which there were great Numbers in that Part of the Land: But that when they went from St. Jago, they turn'd away North some Leagues, when they came to a Town call'd St. Antonio de los Vejos, or, the Town of St. Anthony and the old Men: That there was a great River at that City, from whence they found Means to go down to the Rio de la Plata, and so to Buenos Ayres; and that they frequently carry'd thither great Sums of Money in Chilian Gold, and brought back European Goods from thence.

I had all I wanted now, and bad my Men say no more to them of that, only tell them, that they would come

back, and would travel a little that way to see the Country: The People appear'd very well pleas'd with that, assuring them that if they would do so, they should find some, as well Spaniards as Chilians, who would be Guides to them thro' the Hills; also assuring them, that they would find the Hills very practicable, and the People, as they went along, very ready to assist and furnish them with whatever they found they wanted, especially if they come to know that they were not Spaniards, or that they would protect them from the Spaniards, which would be the most agreeable Thing to them in the World; for it seems many of the Chilians, had been driven to live in the Hills, and some even beyond them, to avoid the Cruelty and Tyranny of the Spaniards especially in the Beginning of their Planting in that Country.

The next Enquiry I order'd them to make, was whether it was possible to pass those Hills with Horses, or Mules, or any Kind of Carriage? And they Assured them, they might travel with Mules, and even with Horses also, but rather with Mules; but as to Carriages, such as Carrs, or Waggon, they allow'd, that was not practicable. They assured us, that some of those Ways thro' the Hills were much frequented; and that there were Towns, or Villages rather, of People, to be found in the Valleys between the said Hills; some of which Villages, were very rich and fruitful, bearing sufficient Provisions for the Inhabitants, who were very numerous. They told us, the People were not much inclin'd to live in Towns as the Spaniards do, but that they

they liv'd scatter'd up and down the Country, as they were guided by the goodnels of the Land; that they liv'd very secure and unguarded, never offering any Injury to one another, nor fearing Injury from any, but the Spaniard.

I caus'd these Enquiries to be made with the utmost Prudence and Caution, so that the Spaniards had not the least suspicion of our Design; and thus having finish'd our Traffick, and taken in Waters and fresh Provisions, we sail'd from Baldivia, having settled a little Correspondence there with two Spaniards, who were very faithful to us: and with two Chilian Indians, who we had, in a more particular Manner, engaged, and who, to make sure of, we took along with us; and having spent about 13 Days here, and taken the Value of about 6000 Pieces of Eight in Silver or Gold but most of it in Gold, we set sail.

Our next Port was the Bay of the Conception. Here, having two or three Men on Board, who were well acquainted with the Coast, we run boldly into the Bay and came to an Anchor in that which they call the Bite, or little Bay, under the Island Quiriquina; and from thence we sent our Boat, with French Mariners to row, and a French Coxen, with a Letter to the Spanish Governor, from Captain Merlotte. Our Pretence was always the same as before, that we had our Most Christian Majesty's Commission, &c. and that we desired Liberty to Wood and Water, and to buy Provisions, having been a very long Voyage, and the like.

Under those Pretences, we lay here about 10 Days, and drove a very considerable Trade for such Goods as we were sure they wanted; and having taken about the Value of 8000 Pieces of Eight, we set sail for the Port or River that goes up to St. Jago, where we expected a very good Market, being distant from the Conception about 65 Leagues.

St. Jago is the Capital City of Chily, and stands 12 Leagues within the Land; there are two Ports, which are made Use of to carry on the Traffick of this Place, viz R. de Ropoculmo, and Port de Valpariso: We were bound to the last, as being the only Port for Ships of Burthen, and where there is Security from bad Weather.

We found Means here, without going up to the City of St. Jago, to have Merchants enough to come down to us; for this being a very rich City, and full of Money, we found all our valuable Silks of China, our Atlafs's, China Damasks, Sattins, &c. were much valued, and very much wanted, and no Price was too high for us to ask for them; for, in a Word, the Spanish Ladies, who, for Pride do not come behind any in the World, whatever they do for Beauty, were so eager for those fine Things, that, almost, any reasonable Quantity might have been sold there; but the Truth of, we had an unreasonable Quantity, and therefore, as we had other Markets to go to, we did not let them know what a great Stock of Goods we had, but took care they had something of every thing they Wanted: We likewise found our Spices were

were an excellent Commodity in those Parts, and sold for a monstrous Profit too, as, indeed, every thing else did also, as above.

We found it very easy to sell here to the Value of 130,000 Pieces of Eight, in all Sorts of China and East-India Goods; for still though we had some of the English Cargo loose, we let none of it be seen. We took most of the Money in Gold uncoin'd, which they got out of the Mountains in great Quantities, and of which we shall have Occasion to speak more hereafter.

Our next trading Port was Coquimbo, a small Town, but a good Port: Here we went in without Ceremony, and upon the same Foot, of being French, were well received, traded underhand with the Spanish Merchants, and got Letters to some other Merchants at Gausco, a Port in a little Bay about 15 Leagues North from Coquimbo.

From hence, to the Port or *Copiapo*, is 25 Leagues: Here we found a very good Port, though no trading Town or City; but the Country being well inhabited, we found Means to acquaint some of the principal Spaniards in the Country, of what we were, and (with which they were pleased well enough) that they might trade with us for such Things, which was easy to see, they gave double Price for to the Merchants who came from Lima, and other Places: This brought them to us with so much Eagerness, that though they bought for their own Use, not for Sale, yet they came furnish'd with Orders, perhaps, for two or three Families to-

gether, and being generally rich, would frequently lay out 600 or 800 Pieces of Eight a Man; so that we had a most excellent Market here, and took above 30,000 Pieces of Eight; that is to say, the Value of it, for they still paid all in Gold.

Here we had an Opportunity to get a Quantity of good Flower, or Wheat Meal, of very good European Wheat; that is to say, of that Sort of Wheat; and withal had good Bisket baked on shore, so that now we got a large Recruit of Bread, and our Men began to make Puddings, and liv'd very comfortably; likewise we got good Sugar at the Ingenioes, or Sugar-Mills, of which there were several here, and the farther North we went, their Number increas'd, for we were now in the Latitude of 28 Degrees two Min. South.

We had but one Port now, of any Consequence that we intended to touch at, 'till we came to the main Place we aim'd at, which was Lima, and this was about two thirds of the Way thither; I mean Porto Rica, or Arica; this was in the Latitude of 18 Degrees, or thereabouts: They were very shy of us here, as having been much upon their Guard for some Years past, for fear of Buccaniers, and English Privateers; but when they understood we were French, and our French Captain sent two Recommendations to them from a Merchant at St. *Jago*, they were then very much satisfy'd, and we had full freedom of Commerce here also.

From hence we came the *Hight* of Lima, the capital Port, if not the capital City,

City, of Peru, lying in the Latitude of 12 Degrees 30 Minutes. Had we made the least Pretence of Trading here, we should, at least, have had Soldiers put on Board our Ships to have prevented it, and the People would have been forbidden to trade with us upon Pain of Death; but Captain Merlotte having brought Letters to a principal Merchant of Lima, he instructed him how to manage himself at his first coming into the Port; Which was to ride without the Town of Gallao, out of the Command of the Puntals or Castles there, and not to come any nearer, upon what Occasion soever, and then to leave the rest to him.

Upon this the Merchant applied himself to the Governor for Leave to go on Board the French Ship at Gallao; the Governor understood him, and would not grant it by any Means; the Reason was, because there had been such a general Complaint by the Merchants from Catagena, Porto Bello, and other Places, of the great Trade carried on here with the French Ships from Europe, to the Destruction of the Merchants, and to the Ruin of the Trade of the Galleons, that the Governor, or Voiceroy of Peru, had forbidden the French Ships Landing any Goods.

Now, though this made out Traffick impracticable at Lima itself, yet it did, by no Means, hinder the Merchants trading with us under Cover, &c. but especially when they came to understand, that we were not laden from Europe, with Bays, long Ells, Druggets, broad Cloth, Serges, Stuffs, Stockings, Hats, and such like Manufactures of France, England, &c. but that our Cargo was the same with that of the Manilla Ships at Acapulco; and that we were laden with Callicoes,

Muslins, fine wrought China Silks, Damasks, Japan Ware, China Ware, Spruces, &c. there was then no withholding them, but they came on board us in the Night with Canoes, and staying all Day, went on Shore again in the Night, carrying their Goods to different Places, where they knew they could convey them on Shore without Difficulty.

In this Manner we traded publickly enough, not much unlike the Manner of our trade at the Manillaes; and here we effectually clear'd outelves of our whole Cargo, as well English Goods, as Indian, to an immense Sum. Here our Men, Officers as well as Seamen, sold their fine Pearl, particularly one large Parcel, containing 173 very fine Pearls, but of different Sizes, which a Priest bought as we were told, to dress up the Image of the Blessed Virgin Mary, in one of of their Churches.

In a Word, we came to a Ballance here; for we sold every thing, that we had the least Intention to part with; the chief things we kept in Reserve were, some Bales of English Goods; also all the Remainder of our Beads and Bugles, Toys, Iron-work, Knives, Scissars, Hatchets, Needles, Pins, Glass Ware, and such Things as we knew the Spaniards did not regard, and which might be useful in our farther Designs, of which my Head was still very full. Those, I say, we kept still.

Here likewise, we sold our Brigantine, which though an excellent Sea-boat, as may well be suppos'd, considering the long Voyage we had made

in her, was yet so Worm-eaten in her Bottom, that unless we should have new sheath'd her, and perhaps, shifted most of her Planks too, which would have taken up a great deal of Time; she was, by no Means, fit to have gone any further, at least, not so long a Run as we had now to make, viz. round the whole Southern Part of America; and where we should find no Port to put in at (I mean, where we should have been able to have got any thing done for the Repair of a Ship) 'till we had come home to England.

It was propos'd here, to have gone to the Governor or Viceroy of Peru, and have obtain'd his Licence or Pass, to have travers'd the Isthmus of America, from Port St. Maria, to the River of Darien; this we would easily have obtain'd under the Character that we then bore, viz. of having the King of *France's* Commission, and had we been really all French, I believe I should have done it; but as we were so many Englishmen, and as such were then at open War with Spain, I did not think it a safe Adventure, I mean, not a rational Adventure, especially considering what a considerable Treasure we had with us.

On the other Hand, as we were now a strong Body of able Seamen, and had two stout Ships under us, we had no Reason to apprehend either the Toil or the Danger of the Voyage round Cape Horn, after which, we should be in a very good Condition to make the rest of our Voyage to England; whereas, if we travel'd over the Isthmus of America, we should be all like a Company of Freebooters,

and Buccaneers, loose and unshipp'd, and should perhaps, run some another, among the Log-wood Cutters at the Bay of Campeachy, and other Places, to get Passage, some to Jamaica, and some to New-England; and, which was worse than all, should be expos'd to a Thousand Dangers on Account of the Treasure we had with us, perhaps, even to that of murdering and robbing one another; and, as Captain Merlotte said, who was really a Frenchman: It were much more eligible for us, as French, or if we had been such, to have gone up to Acapulco, and there to sell our Ships, and get Licence to travel to Mexico, and then to have got the Viceroy's Assiento, to have come to Europe in the Galleons; but as we were so many Englishmen, it was impracticable; our Seamen also being Protestants, such as Seamen generally are, and bold mad Fellows, they would never have carry'd on a Disguise, both of their Nation, and of their Religion, for so long a Time as it would have been necessary to do for such a Journey and Voyage.

But besides all these Difficulties, I had other Projects in my Head, which made me against all the Proposals of passing by Land to the North-Sea; otherwise, had I resolv'd it, I should not have much concern'd myself about obtaining a Licence from the Spaniards; for, as we were a sufficient Number of Men to have forced our Way, we should not much have stood upon their giving us leave, or not giving us leave to go.

But, as I have said, my Views lay another Way, and my Head had been long

long working upon the Discourse my Men had with the Spaniards at Bal-davia; I frequently talk'd with the the two Chilian Indies which I had on Board, and who spoke Spanish pretty well, and who he had taught to speak a little English.

I had taken care that they should have all the good Usage imaginable on Board; I had given each a very good Suit of Cloaths, made by our Taylor, but after their own Manner, with each of them a bays Cloak, and had given them Hats, Shoes, and Stockings, and every thing they desir'd, and they were mighty well pleas'd, and I talk'd very freely with them about the Passage of the Mountains, for that was now my grand Design.

While I was coming up the Chilian Shore, as you have heard that is to say, at St. Jago, at the Conception, at Arica, and even at Lima, itself, we enquir'd, on all Occasions, into the Situation of the Country, the Manner of traveling, and what Kind of Country it was beyond the Mountains? And we found them all agreeable in the same Story; and that passing the Mountains of Les Cordelieras, for so they call them in Peru, thought it was the same Ridge of Hills as we call the Andes, was no strange Thing; that there were not One or Two, but a great many Places found out, where they pass'd as well with Horses and Mules, as on Foot, and even some with Carriages; and in particular, they told us at Lima, that from Potosi, and the Towns thereabouts, there was a long Valley, which ran for 160 Leagues in Length

Southward, and S. E. and that it continued, 'till the Hills parting, it opened into the open level Country on the other Side; and that there were several Rivers which began in that great Valley, and which all of them run away to the S. and S. E. and afterwards, went away E. N. E. and so fell into the great Rio de la Plata, and empty'd themselves into the North-Seas; and that Merchants travel'd to those Rivers, and then went down in Boats as far as the Town or City of the Ascension, and the Buenos Ayres.

This was very satisfying, you may be sure, especially to hear them agree in it, that the Andes were to be pass'd (thought passing them hereabouts, where, I knew, the main Land from the West Shore, where we now were, must be at least 1500 Miles broad) was no Part of my Project; but I laid up all these Things in my Head, and resolv'd to go away to the South again, and act as I should see Cause.

We were now got into a very hot Climate, and, whatever was the Cause, my Men began to grow very sickly, and that to such a Degree, that I was once afraid we had got the Plague among us; but our Surgeons, who we all call Doctors at Sea, assur'd me, there was nothing of that among them, and yet we buried 17 Men here, and had between 20 and 30 more sick, and, as I thought, dangerously too.

In this Extremity, for I was really very much concern'd about it, one of my Doctors came to me, and told me, he had been at the City (that is at Lima) to buy some

some Drugs and Medicines to recruit his Chest, and he had fallen into Company with an Irish Jesuit, who he found was a very good Physician, and that he had had some Discourse with him about our sick Men, and, he believ'd, for a good Word or two, he could persuade him to come and visit them.

I was very loth to consent to it, for, says I to the Surgeon, if he is an Irishman, he speaks English, and he will perceive, that we are all Englishmen, and so we shall be betray'd, all our Designs will be blown up at once, and our farther Measures be all broken, and therefore I would not consent: This I did not speak from the Fear of any Hurt they could have done me by Force, for I had no Reason to value that, being able to have sought my Way, clear out of the Seas, if I had been put to it: But, as I had traded all the Way by Stratagem, and had many considerable Views still behind, I was unwilling to be disappointed by the Discovery of my Schemes; or that the Spaniards should know upon what a double Foundation I acted, and how I was a French Ally and Merchant, or an English Enemy and Privateer, just as I pleas'd, and as Opportunity should offer; in which case they would have been sure to have trapann'd me, if possible, under the Pretence of the former, and have led me, if ever they should get an Advantage over me, as one of the latter.

This made me very cautious, and I had good Reason for it too, and yet the Sickness and Danger of the Men press'd me very hard to have the Advice of a good Physician, if it was possible; and especially to be satisfy'd whether it was really the Plague or no; for I was very uneasy about that.

But my Surgeon told me, that as to my Apprehension of Discovery, he would undertake to prevent it by this Method: First, he said, he found that the Irishman did not understand French at all, and so that I had nothing to do but to order, that when he came on Board, as little English should be spoke in his Hearing as possible; and this was not difficult, for almost all our Men had a little French at their Tongues End, by having so many Frenchmen on Board of them; others had the Levant Jargon, which they call *Lingua Frank*, so that, if they had but due Caution, it could not be suddenly perceiv'd what Countrymen they were.

Besides this the Surgeon order'd, that as soon as the Padre came on Board, he should be surrounded with French Seamen only, some of which should be order'd to follow him from Place to Place, and chop in with their nimble Tongues, upon some Occasion or other, so that he should hear French spoken where-ever he turn'd himself.

Upon this, which, indeed, appeared very easy to be done, I agreed to let the Doctor come on Board, and accordingly the Surgeon brought him the next Day, where Captain Merlotte receiv'd him in the Cabin, and treated him very handsomely, but nothing was spoken but French or Spanish; and the Surgeon, who had pretended himself to be an Irishman, acted as Interpreter between the Doctor and us.

Here

Here we told him the Case of our Men that were sick; some of them, indeed, were French, and others that could speak French, were instructed to speak to him, as if they could speak no other Tongue, and them the Surgeon interpreted; others who were English, were call'd Irishmen, and two or three were allow'd to be English Seamen, pick'd up in the East-Indies, as we had Seamen, we told him, of all Nations.

The Matter, in short, was so carry'd, that the good Man, for such I really think he was, had no Manner of Suspicion; and, to do him Justice, he was an admirable Physician, and did our Men a great deal of good; for all of them, but three recover'd under his Hands, and those three had recover'd, if they had not, like mad Men, drank Punch when they were almost well, and by their Intemperance, inflam'd their Blood, and thereby thrown themselves back again into their Fever, and put themselves as the Padre said of them, out of the Reach of Medicine.

We treated this Man of Art with a great deal of Respect, made him some very handsome Presents, and particular such as he could not come at in the Country where he was; besides which, I order'd he should have the Value of 100 Dollars in Gold given him; but he, on the other Hand, thanking Captain Merlotte for his Bounty, would have no Money; but he accepted a Present of some Linnen, a few Handkerchiefs, some Nutmegs, and a Piece of black Bays, most of which

however, he said, he made Presents of again in the City among some of his Acquaintance.

But he had a farther Design in his Head, which afterwards he communicated in Confidence to the Surgeon I have mention'd, who convers'd with him, and by him to me, and which was to him, indeed, of the highest Importance. The Case was this;

He takes our Surgeon on Shore with him one Day from the Madagascar Ship, where he had been with him to visit some of our sick Men, and drinking a Glass of Wine with him, he told him, he had a Favour to ask of him, and a Thing to reveal to him in Confidence, which was of the utmost Consequence to himself, though of no great Value to him (the Surgeon) if he would promise the utmost Secrecy to him on his Faith and Honour, he would put his Life into his Hand, For, Seignior, says he, it will be no less, nor would any thing less than my Life, says he, pay for it, if you should discover it to any of the People here, or any where else upon the Coast.

The Surgeon was a very honest Man, and carry'd, indeed, the Index of it in his Face, and the Padre said afterwards, he inclin'd to put his Confidence in him, because he thought he saw something of an honest Man in his Countenance: After so frank a Beginning, the Surgeon made no Scruple to tell him, that seeing he inclin'd to treat him with such Confidence, and to put a Trust of so great Importance in him, he would give him all the Assurance that was in his Power, that he
would

would be as faithful to him, as it was possible to be to himself; and that the Secret should never go out of his Mouth to any one in the World, but to such, and at such Time, as he should consent to and direct. In short, he used so many solemn Protestations, that the Padre made no Scruple to trust him with the Secret, which, indeed, was no less than putting his Life into his Hands: The Case was this, he told him, he had heard them talk of going to Ireland in their Return, and as he had been 30 Years out of his own Country, in such a remote Part of the World, where it was never likely that he should see it again, the Notion he had entertain'd, that this Ship was going thither, and might set him on Shore there, that he might once more see his native Country, and his Family and Friends, had fill'd his Mind with such a surprizing Joy, that he could no longer contain himself; and that therefore, if he would procure Leave of the Captain, that he might come privately on Board, and take his Passage home, he would willingly pay whatever the Captain should desire of him; but that it must be done with the greatest Secrecy imaginable, or else he was undone; for that if he should be discover'd and stopp'd he should be confin'd in the Jesuits House there, as long as he liv'd.

The Surgeon told him, the Thing was easy to be done, if he would give him Leave to acquaint one Man in the Ship with it, which was not Captain Merlotte, but a certain Englishman, who was a considerable Person in the Ship, without whom the Captain did nothing, and who would

be more secure to trust, by far, than Captain Merlotte. The Padre told him, that without asking him any Reason, since he had put his Life in his Hands, he would trust him with the Management of it, and therefore left it intirely to him.

The Surgeon accordingly brought him on Board to me, and making a Confidence of the whole Matter to me, I turn'd to the Padre, and told him, in English, giving him my Hand, that I would be under all the Engagements and Promises of Secrecy, that our Surgeons had been in, for his Security and Satisfaction; that he had merited too well of us, for us to wish him any Ill; and in short, that the whole Ship should be engag'd for his Security. I told him, that as to his coming on Board, and bringing any thing off that belong'd to him, he must take his own Measures, and answer to himself for the Success; that after he was on Board, we would sink the Ship under him, or blow her up into the Air, before we would deliver him up, on any Account whatever.

He was so pleas'd with my frank Way of talking to him, that he told me, he would put his Life into my Hands, with the same Freedom as he had done before with my Surgeon; so we began to concert Measures for his coming on Board with Secresy.

He told us, that there was no need of any Proposals, for he would acquaint the Head of their House, that he intended to go on Board the French Ship in the Road, and to go to St. Jago, where he had several Times

Times been in the same Manner; and that, as they had not the least Suspicion of him, he was very well satisfy'd, that they would make no Scruple of it.

But his Mistake in this might have been his Ruin; for tho' had it been a Spanish Ship, they would not have mistrusted him, yet when he nam'd the French Ship in the Road of Calao, they began to question him very smartly about it: Upon which he was oblig'd to tell them, that since they were doubtful of him, he would not go at all, telling them withal, that it was hard to suspect him who had been so faithful to his Vows, as to reside for near 30 Years among them, when he might frequently have made an Escape from them, if he had been so dispos'd. So for three or four Days he made no appearance for going at all; but having had private Notice from me the Evening before we sail'd he found Means to get out of their Hands, came down to the Calao on a Mule in the Night, and our Surgeon lying ready with our Boat about half a League from the Town, as by Appointment, he took him on Board, with a Negro his Servant, and brought him safe to the Ship: Nor had we receiv'd him on Board half an Hour, but, being unmoor'd and ready to sail, we put out to Sea, and carry'd him clear off.

He made his Excuses to me, that he was come away naked, according to his Profession; that he had propos'd to have furnish'd himself with some Provisions for the Voyage, but that the unexpected Suspicious of the Head of their College, or House, had

oblig'd him to come away in a Manner that would not admit of it; for that he might rather be said to have made his Escape, than to have been come fairly off.

I told him, he was very welcome; (and indeed so he was, for he had been already more worth to us than ten times his Passage came to) and, that he should be enter'd into immediate Pay, as Physician to both the Ships, which I was sure none of our Surgeons would repine at, but rather be glad of; and accordingly I immediately order'd him a Cabin, with a very good Apartment adjoining to it, and appointed him to eat in my own Mess whenever he pleas'd, on or by himself, on his particular Days, when he thought fit.

And now it was impossible to conceal from him, that we were indeed an English Ship, and that I was Captain in Chief; except, as has been said upon Occasion of coming to any particular Town of Spain; I let him know, I had a Commission to make Prize of the Spaniards, and appear their open Enemy, but that I had chosen to treat with them as Friends, in a Way of Commerce, as he had seen. He admir'd much the Moderation I had us'd, and how I had avoided enriching myself by the Spoil, as I might have done; and he made me many Compliments upon that Head, which I excus'd hearing, and begg'd him to forbear. I told him, we were Christians, and as we had made a very prosperous Voyage, I was resolv'd not to do any honest Man the least Injustice, if I could avoid it.

But

But I must observe here, that I did not enter immediately into all this Confidence with him neither, nor all at once, neither did I let him into any Part of it, but under the same solemn Engagements of Secrecy that he had laid upon us, nor till I was come above 80 Leagues South from Lima.

The first Thing I took the Freedom to speak to him upon was thus; finding his Habit a little offensive to our rude Seamen, I took him into the Cabbin, the very next Day after we came to Sea, and told him, that I was oblig'd to mention to him what I knew he would soon perceive, namely, that we were all Protestants, except three or four of the Frenchmen; and I did not know how agreeable that might be to him: He answer'd, that he was not at all offended with that Part: That it was none of his Business to enquire into any one's Opinion, and farther than they gave Leave: That if it was his Business to cure the Souls of Men on Shore, his Business on Board was to cure their Bodies; and as for the rest, he would exercise no other Function than that of a Physician on board the Ship, without my Leave.

I told him, that was very obliging; but that then, for his own Sake, I had a Proposal to make him, which was, whether it would be disagreeable to him to lay aside the Habit of a Religious, and put on that of a Gentleman, so to accommodate himself the more easily the Men on Board, who, perhaps, might be rude to him in his Habit; Seamen being not always Men of the most Manners.

He thank'd me very sincerely: He told me, he had been in England as well as in Ireland, and went dress'd there as a Gentleman, and was ready to do so now, if I thought fit, to avoid given any Offence; and added, that he chose to do so; but then smiling, said, he was at a great Loss, for he had no Cloaths. I bad him take no Care about that, for I would furnish him: And immediately we dress'd him up like an Englishman, in a Suit of very good Cloaths, which belong'd to one of our Midshipmen that died. I gave him also a good Wig and Sword, and he presently appear'd upon the Quarter-Deck like a grave Physician, and was call'd Doctor.

From that Minute, by whose Contrivance we knew not, it went current among the Seamen, that the Spanish Doctor was an Englishman, and a Protestant, and only had put on the other Habit to disguise himself, and make his escape to us: And this was so universally believ'd, that it held to the last Day of the Voyage; for as soon as I met with it, I took Care that No-body that had it in their Power would ever contradict it: And as for the Doctor himself, he was very glad of it; and when he first heard of it, said, nothing could be more to his Advantage, and that he would take Care to humour it among the Men, as far as lay in his Power.

However, the Doctor took Care of one Thing, and earnestly desired we would all be mindful of it, viz. That he never offer'd to go on Shore, whatever Port we came to afterwards, and what he desired of us, was, that none of the Spaniards might, by Enquiry, hear

hear upon any Occasion, of his being on board our Ship; but above all, That none of our Men, the Officers especially, would ever come so much in Reach of the Spaniards on Shore, as to put it into their Power to seize upon them by Reprizal, and so oblige us to deliver him up by Exchange.

I went so far with him, and so did Captain Merlotte also, as to assure him, that if the Spaniards should, by any Stratagem, or by Force, get any of our Men, nay, tho' it was ourselves, into their Hands, yet he should, upon no Condition whatever, be deliver'd up.

And, indeed, for this very Reason we were very shy of going on Shore at all; and as we had really no Business any where but just for Water and fresh Provisions, which we also had taken in a very good Store at Lima, so, for our Part, we put in no where at all, in the Coast of Peru, because there we might have been more particularly liable to the Impertinencies of the Spaniards Inquiry: As to force, we were furnish'd not to be in the least apprehensive of that.

Being thus, I say, resolv'd to have no more to do with the Coast of Peru, we stood off to the Sea, and the first Land we made, was a little unfrequented Island, in the Latitude of 17 Degrees 13 Minutes, where our Men went on Shore in the Boats three or four times to catch Tortoises, or Turtles, being the first we had met with since we came from the East-Indies. And here they took so many, and had such a prodigious Quantity of Eggs out of them, that the whole Company of both Ships liv'd on them, till within four or five Days of

our coming to the Island of Juan Fernandes, which was our next Port. Some of these Tortoises were so large and so heavy, that no single Man could turn them, and sometimes, as much as four Men could carry to the Boats.

We met with some bad Weather after this, which blew us off to Sea, the Wind blowing very hard at the S. E. but it was not so great a Wind as to endanger us, tho' we lost sight of one another in this Storm, than we had done in all our Voyage: However, we were none of us in any great Concern for it now, because we had agreed before, that if we should lose one another, we should make the best of our Way to the Island of Juan Fernandes: And this we observ'd now so directly, that all of us shaping our Coast for the Island, as soon as the Storm abated, came in Sight of one another long before we came thither; which, you may be sure, was very agreeable to us all.

We were, including the Time of the Storm, 218 Days from Lima to the Island of Juan Fernandes, having most of the Time cross contrary Winds, and more bad Weather than is usual in those Seas: However, we were all in good Condition, both Ships and Men.

Here we fell to the old Trade of hunting of Goats. And here our new Doctor set some of our Men to Simpling, that is to say, to gather some Physical Herbs, which he let them see afterwards were very well worth their while. Our Surgeons assisted, and saw the Plants, but had never observ'd the same Kind in England. They gave me the Names of them; and 'tis the only Discovery in all my Travels which I have not reserv'd so carefully as to

to publish for the Advantage of others, and which I regret the Omission of very much.

While we were here, an odd Accident gave me some Uneasiness, which, however, did not come to much: Early in the Gray of the Morning, little Wind, and a smooth Sea, a small frigate-built Vessel, under Spanish Colours, Pennant flying, appear'd off at Sea, at the Opening of the N. E. Point of the Island; as soon as she came fair to the Road, she lay by, as if she came to look into the Port only, and when she perceiv'd that we began to loose our Sails to speak with her, she stretch'd away to the Northward, and then altering her Course, stood away N. E. using Oars to assist her, and so got away.

Nothing could be more evident to us, than that she came to look at us, nor could we imagine any thing less; from whence we immediately concluded, that we were discover'd, and that our taking away the Doctor had given a great Alarm among the Spaniards (as indeed we afterwards came to understand it had done.) But we came a little while afterwards to a better Understanding about the Frigate.

I was so uneasy about it, that I resolv'd to speak with her if possible; so I order'd the Madagascar Ship, which, of the Two, was rather a better Sailor, than our own, to stand in directly to the Coast of Chili, and then to ply to the Northward just in Sight of the Shore, till he came into the Latitude of 22; and if he saw

nothing in all that Run, then to come down again directly to the Latitude of the Island of Juan Fernandes, but keeping the Distance of 10 Leagues off farther than before, and to ply off and on in that Latitude five Days, and then, if he did not meet with me, to stand in for the Island.

While he did this, I did the same at the Distance of near 50 Leagues from the Shore, being the Distance which I thought the Frigate kept in as she stood away from me. We made our Cruise both of us very punctually, and I found him in the Station we agreed on, and we both stood into the Road again from whence we came.

We no sooner made the Road, but we saw the Frigate, as I call'd her, with another Ship, at an Anchor in the same Road where she had seen us: And it was easy to see that they were both of them in a great Surprise and Hurry at our appearing, and that they were under Sail in so very little Time, as that we easily saw they had slipp'd their Cables, or cut away their Anchors. They fir'd Guns twice, which we found was a Signal for their Boats, which were on Shore, to come on Board; and soon after, we saw three Boats go off to them; tho', as we understood afterwards, they were oblig'd to leave 16 or 17 of there Men behind them, who, being among the Rocks catching of Goats, either did not hear the Signals, or could not come to their Boats time enough.

When

When we saw them in this Hurry, we thought it must be something extraordinary, and bore down directly upon them, having the Weather-Gage.

They were Ships of pretty good Force, and full of Men; and when they saw we were resolv'd to speak with them, and that there was no getting away from us, they made ready to fight us; and putting themselves upon a Wind, first stretching a Head to get the Weather-Gage of us, when they thought they were pretty well, boldly attack'd, and lay by for us, hoisting the English Antient and Union-Jack.

We had our French Couloirs out till now; but being just, as we thought, going to engage, I told Captain Merlotte, I scorn'd to hide what Nation I was of when I came to fight for the Honour of our Country; and, besides, as these People had spread English Colours, I ought to let them know what I was; that if they were really English, and Friends, we might not fight by Mistake, and shed the innocent Blood of our own Countrymen; and that if they were Rogues, and counterfeited their being English, we should soon perceive it

However, when they saw us put out English Colours, they knew not what to think of it, but lay by a while to see what we would do. I was as much puzzled as they, for as I came nearer, I thought they seem'd to be English Ships, as well by their Bulk as by their Way of Working; and as I came still nearer, I thought could perceive so plainly by my Glas-

ses, that they were English Seamen, that I made a Signal to our other Ship, who had the Van, and was just bearing down upon them, to bring too; and I lent my Boat to him, to know his Opinion: He sent me Word, he did believe them to be English; and the more (said he) because they could be no other Nation but English or French, and the latter he was sure they were not; but since we were the largest Ships, and that they might as plainly see us to be English, as we could see them, he said, he was for fighting them, because they ought to let them know who they were first: However, as I had fir'd a Gun to bring him to, he lay by a little 'till we spoke thus together.

While this was doing we could see one of their Boats come off with six Oars, and two Men (a Lieutenant and a Trumpeter it seems they were) sitting in the Stern, and one of them holding up a Flag of Truce. We let them come forward, and when they came nearer, so that we could hale 'em with a Speaking-Trumpet, we ask'd 'em, What Countrymen they were? and they answer'd, Englishmen. Then we ask'd them, Whence their Ship? Their Answer was, from London. At which we bad them come on Board, which they did, and we soon found, that we were all Countrymen and Friends, and their Boat went immediately back to let them know it. We found, afterwards, that they were mere Privateers, fitted out from London also, but coming last from Jamaica; and we let them know no other of ourselves; but declin'd keeping Company,

pany, telling them, we were bound now upon Traffick, and not for Purchase: That we had been at the East Indies, had made some Prizes, and were going back thither again. They told us, they were come into South-Seas for Purchase, but that they had made little of it; having heard there were three large French Men of War in those Seas, in the Spanish Service, which made them wish, that they had not come about; and that they were still very doubtful what to do.

We assur'd them, we had been the Heighth of Lima; and that we had not heard of any Men of War; but that we had pass'd for such ourselves, and perhaps were the Ships they had heard of, for that we were three Sail at first, and had sometimes carry'd French Colours.

This made them very glad; for it was certainly so, that we had pass'd for three French Men of War; and they were so assur'd of it, that they went afterwards boldly up the Coast, and made several very good Prizes. We then found also, that it was one of these Ships that look'd into the Road, as above, when we were here before, and seeing us then with French Colours, took us for the Men of War they had heard of. And they added, that when we came in upon them again, they gave themselves up for lost Men, but were resolv'd to have fought it out to the last, or rather to sink by our Sides, or blow themselves up, than be taken.

I was not at all sorry that we had made this Discovery before we en-

gag'd; for the Captains were two brave resolute Fellows, and had two very good Ships under them, one of 36 Guns, but able to have carry'd 44 Guns; the other, which we call'd the Frigate-built Ship, carry'd 28 Guns, and they were both full of Men. Now, tho' we should not have fear'd their Force, yet my Case differ'd from what it did at first, for we had that on Board that makes all Men Cowards, I mean Money; of which we had such a Cargo as few British Ships ever brought out of those Seas; and I was one of those that had now no Occasion to run needless Hazards; so that, in short, I was as well pleas'd without fighting, as they could be: Besides, I had other Projects now in my Head, and those of no less Consequence, than of planting a new World, and settling new Kingdoms to the Honour and Advantage of my Country; and many a Time I wish'd heartily, that all my rich Cargo was safe at London: That my Merchants were sharing the Silver, and the Gold, and the Pearl among themselves; and, that I was but safe on Shore, with 1000 good Families, upon the South of Chili, and about 1500 good Soldiers, and Arms for 10000 more (of which by-and-by) and with the two Ships I had now with me, I would not apprehend all the Power of the Spaniards; I mean, that they could bring against me in the South-Seas.

I had all these Things, I say, in my Head already, tho' nothing like to what I had afterwards, when I saw farther into the Matter myself: However, these Things made me very glad, that I had no Occasion to engage those Ships. When

When we came thus to understand one another, we went all into the Road together, and I invited the Captains of the two Privateers on board me, where I treated them with the best I had; tho' I had no great Dainties now, having been so long out of England. They invited me, and Captain Merlotte, and the Captain of the Madagascar Ship, in Return, and indeed treated us very nobly.

After this, we chang'd some Presents of Refreshments, and, particularly, they sent me a Hoghead of Rum, which was very acceptable; and I sent them, in Return, a Runlet of Arrack, excusing myself, that I had no great Store. I sent them also the Quantity of 100 Weight of Nutmegs and Cloves; but the most agreeable Present I sent them, was, 20 Pieces of my Madagascar dry'd Beef, cur'd in the Sun, the like of which they had never seen or tasted before; and, without Question, 'tis such an excellent Way of curing Beef, that if I were to be at Madagascar again, I would take in a sufficient Quantity of Beef to preserv'd, to victual the whole Ship for the Voyage; and I leave it as a Direction for all English Seamen that have Occasion to use East-India Voyages.

I bought afterwards six Hogheads of Rum of these Privateers, for I found they were very well stor'd with Liquors, whatever else they wanted.

We stay'd here 12 or 14 Days, but took Care, by Agreement, that our Men should never go on Shore the same Days

that there Men went on Shore, or theirs when ours went, as well to avoid their Caballing together, as to avoid Quarrelling; tho' the latter was the Pretence. We agreed also, not to receive on Board any of our Ships respectively any of the Crews belonging to the other: And this was their Advantage, for if we would have given Way to that, half their Men, would, for ought I know, have come over to us.

While we lay here, one of them went a Cruizing, finding the Wind fair to run in for the Shore, and in about five Days she came back with a Spanish Prize, laden with Meal, Cocoa, and a large Quantity of Bisket, ready bak'd: She was bound to Lima, from Baldivia, or some Port nearer; I do not remember, exactly, which: They had some Gold on Board, but not much, and had bought their Lading at St. Jago. As soon as we saw them coming in with a Prize in Tow, we put out our French Colours, and gave Notice to the Privateers, that it was for their Advantage that we did so; and so indeed it was, for it would presently have alarmed all the Country, if such a Fleet of Privateers had appear'd on the Coast. We prevail'd with them to give us their Spanish Prisoners, and to allow us to set them on Shore; I having assur'd them, I would not land them till I came to Baldivia, nor suffer them to have the least Correspondence with any Body till they came thither; the said Spaniards also giving their Parole of Honour, not to give an Account of their being taken, 'till 14 Days after they were on Shore.

This being the farthest Port South which the Spaniards are Masters of in Chili, or indeed on the whole Continent of America, they could not desire me to
carry

carry them any farther : They allowed us a Quantity of Meal and Cocoa out of their Booty, for the Subsistence of the Prisoners; and I brought a larger Quantity more of it, there being more than they knew how to stow; and they did not resolve to keep the Spanish Ship which they took : By this Means I was doubly stock'd with Flour and Bread; but as the first was very good, and well pack'd in Cask, and very good Jars, it was no Burthen.

We bought also some of their Cocoa, and made Chocolate 'till our Men gorg'd themselves with it, and would eat no more.

Having furnish'd ourselves here with Goats flesh, as usual, and taken in Water sufficient, we left Juan Fernandes, and saw the Cruisers go out the same Tide, they steering N. N. E. and we S. S. They saluted us at parting, and we bad them good-bye the same Language.

While we were now sailing for the Coast of Chili, with fair Wind and pleasant Weather, my Spanish Doctor came to me, and told me he had a Piece of News to acquaint me with which, he said, he believ'd would please me very well; and this was, that one of the Spanish Prisoners was a Planter, as 'tis call'd in the West-Indies, or a Farmer as we should call them in England, of Villa-Rica, a Town built by the Spaniards near the Foot of the Andes, above the Town of Baldivia; and that he had enter'd into Discourse with him upon the Situation of those Hills, the Nature of the Surface, the Rivers, Hollows

Passages into them, &c. whither there were any Valleys within the Hills, of that Extent, how water'd, what Cattle, what People how dispos'd and the like; and, in short, if there were any passing over them; and he told me in few Words, that he found him to be a very honest, frank, open Sort of a Person, who seem'd to speak without Reserve, without the least Jealousy or Apprehension; and that in a Word, he believ'd, I might have an ample Discovery from him of all that I desir'd to know.

I was very glad of this News, you may be sure; and it was not many Hours before I made him bring the Spaniard into the great Cabbin to me, where I treated him very civilly, and gave him Opportunity several Times, to see himself very well us'd; and indeed all the Spaniards in the Ship were very thankful, for my bringing them out of the Hands of the Privateers, and took all Occasions to let us see it.

I said little the first Time, but discours'd in general of America, of the Greatness and Opulency of the Spaniards there; the infinite Wealth of the Country, &c. and I remember well, discoursing once of the great Riches of the Spaniards in America, the silver Mines of Potosi, and other Places, he turn'd short upon me, smiling, and said, we Spaniards are the worst Nation in the World, that such a Treasure as this could have belong'd to; for it it had fallen into any other Hands than ours, says he, they would have search'd farther into it before now. I ask'd him, what he

meant

meant by that? I said, I thought they had search'd it thoroughly enough; for that I believ'd no Nation in the World could ever have spread such vast Dominions, and planted a Country such a prodigious Extent, and have not only kept the Possession of it, but have maintain'd the Government also, and even inhabited it, with so few People.

Perhaps, Seignior, says he, you think, notwithstanding that Opinion of yours, that we have many more People of our Nation in New Spain than you have. I do not know, said I, how many you may have; but if I should believe, you have as many here as in Old Spain, it would be but a few in Comparison of the infinite Extent of the King of Spain's Dominions in America. And then, added he, I assure you, Seignior, there is not one Spaniard to 1000 Acres of Land, take one Place with another throughout New Spain.

Very well, said I, then I think the Riches and wealth of America is very well search'd, in Comparison to the Number of People you have to search after it: No, says he, it is not neither; for the greatest Number of our People live in that Part where the Wealth is not greatest; and where even the Governor and Viceroy, enjoying a plentiful and luxurious Life, they take no Thought for the Encrease, either of the King's Revenues, or the national Wealth: This he spoke of the City of Mexico, whose Greatness, and the Number of its Inhabitants, he said, was to the rest of the Body: And what think you, Seignior, said he, that in that one

City, where is neither Silver nor Gold but what is brought from the Mountains of St. Claro, the Mines at St. Augustine's and our Lady, some of which are 100 Leagues from it, and yet there are more Spaniards in Mexico than in both these two prodigious Empires of Chili and Peru?

I seem'd not to believe him; and indeed I did not believe him at first, till he return'd to me with a Question, Pray, Seignior Captain, says he, how many Spaniards do you think there may be in this vast Country of Chili? I told him, I could make no guess of the Numbers; but, without Question, there were many Thousands; intimating, that I might suppose near an Hundred Thousand; At which he laugh'd heartily, and assur'd me, that there were not above Two Thousand Five Hundred in the whole Kingdom, besides Women and Children, and some few Soldiers, which they look'd upon as nothing to Inhabitants, because they were not settled any where.

I was indeed surpriz'd, and began to name some large Places, which I thought has singly more Spaniards in them than what we talk'd of. He presently ran over some of them; and naming Baldivia first, as the Most Southward, he ask'd me, how many I thought were there? And I told him about 300 Families: He smil'd at me, and assur'd me, there were not above three or four and fifty Families in the whole Place, and about twenty-five Soldiers; tho' it was a Fortification and a Frontier. (At Villa Rica, or the rich Town) where

where he liv'd he said, their might be about 60 Families, and a Lieutenant with 20 Soldiers. In a Word, we pass'd over the many Places between, and came to the Capital St. Jago, where after I had suppos'd there were 5000 Spaniards; he protested to me, there were not above 800, including the Viceroy's Court, and including the Families at Valparaiso, which is the Sea-Port, and excluding only the Soldiers, which, as he said, being the Capital of the whole Kingdom, might be about 200, excluding the Religious, who, he added, laughing, signify'd nothing to the planting a Country, for they neither cultivated the Land, nor increased the People.

Our Doctor, who was our Interpreter, smil'd at this, but merrily said, that was very true, or ought to be so; intimating, that tho' the Priests do not cultivate the Land, yet they might chance to increase the People a little; but that was by the Way. As to the Number of Inhabitants at St. Jago, the Doctor agreed with him, and said, he believ'd he had said more than there was, rather than less.

As then to the Kingdom or Empire of Peru, in which there are many considerable Cities and Places of Note, such as Limo, Quitto, Cusco la Plata, and others; besides the great Number of Towns on the Sea-Coasts, such as Port Arica, St. Miguel, Payta, Guayaquil, Truxillo, and many others.

He answer'd, that it was true, that the City of Lima, with the Town

of Gallio, was much increas'd within a few Years; and, particularly, of late, by the settling of between three or four hundred French there, who came by the King of Spain's Licence; but that before the coming of those Gentlemen, at which he shook his Head, the Country was richer, tho' the Inhabitants were not so many; and that, take it as it was now, there could not be reckon'd above 1500 Families of Spaniards, excluding the Soldiers, and the Clergy, which as above, he reckon'd nothing as to the planting the Country.

We came then to discourse of the Silver-Mines at Potosi, and here he suppos'd, as I did also, a very great Number of People: But, Seignior, says he, What People is it you are speaking of? There are many thousands of Servants, but few Masters; there is a Garrison of 400 Soldiers, always kept in Arms, and in good Order, to secure the Place, and keep the Negroes and Criminals, who work in the Mines, in Subjection; but, that there were not besides 500 Spaniards, that is to say Men, in the whole Place and its Adjacents. So that, in short, he would not allow above 7000 Spaniards in the whole Empire of Peru, and two thousand five hundred in Chili; but at the same time allowing twice as many as both these in the City of Mexico only.

After this Discourse was over, I ask'd him, what he inferr'd from it, as to the Wealth of the Country not being discover'd? He answer'd, it was evident that it was for want of People that the Wealth of the Country

try lay hid; that there was infinitely more lay unenquir'd after, than had yet been known; that there were several Mountains in Peru equall rich in Silver with that of Potosi; and as for Chili, says he, and the Country where we live, there is more Gold at this time in the Mountains of the Andes, and more easy to come at, than in all the World besides: Nay, says he, with some Passion, there is more Gold every Year wash'd down out of the Andes of Chili into the Sea, and lost there, than all the Riches that go from New Spain to Europe in 20 Years amount to.

This Discourse fir'd my Imagination, you may be sure, and I renew'd it upon all Occasions, taking more or less Time, every Day, to talk with this Spaniard upon the Subject of Cultivation of the Lands, Improvement of the Country, and the like; always making such Enquiries into the State of the Mountains of the Andes, as best suited my Purpose, but yet so as not to give him the least Intimation of my Design.

One Day, conversing with him again about the great Riches of the Country, and of the Mountains and Rivers, as above, I ask'd him, that seeing the Place was so rich, why were they not all Princes, or as rich as Princes, that dwell there?

He shook his Head, and said, it was a great Reproach upon them many Ways; and when I press'd him to explain himself, he answered, it was occafied by two Things; namely, Pride and Sloth. Seignior, says

he, we have so much Pride that we have no Avarice, and we do not covet enough to make us work for it: We walk about sometimes, says he, on the Banks of the Streams that come down from the Mountains, and if we see a Bit of Gold lie on the Shore, it may be we will vouchsafe to lay off our Cloak and step forward to take it up; but if we were sure to carry home as much as we could stand under, we would not strip and go to work in the Water to wash it out of the Sand; or take the Pains to get it together; nor, perhaps, dishonour ourselves so much as to be seen carrying a Load, no, not for all the Value of the Gold itself.

I laugh'd then, indeed; and told him, he was dispos'd to jest with his Countrymen, or to speak Ironically; meaning, that they did not take so much Pains as was requir'd, to make them effectually rich; but that, I suppos'd, he would not have me understand him as he spoke: He said, I might understand him as favourably as I pleas'd, but I should find the Fact to be true, if I would go up with him to Villa Rica, when I came to Baldivia; and with that, he made his Compliment to me, and invited me to his House.

I ask'd him, with a Con Licentia, Seignior, that is, with Pardon for so much Freedom, that if he lived in so rich a Country, and where there was so inexhaustible a Treasure of Gold, how he came to fall into this State of Captivity? And what made him venture himself upon the Sea to fall into the Hands of Pyrates?

He

He answer'd, that it was on the very Foot of what he had been complaining of; and that having seen so much of the Wealth of the Country he liv'd in, and having reproached himself with that very Indolence which he now blam'd all his Countrymen for, he had resolv'd, in Conjunction with Two of his Neighbours the Spaniards, and Men of good Substance, to set to work in a Place in the Mountains where they had found some Gold, and had seen much wash'd down by the Water, and to find what might be done in a thorough search after the Fund or Mine of it, which they were sure were not far off; and that he was going to Lima, and from thence, if he could not be supply'd, to Panama, to buy Negroes for the Work, that they might carry it on with the better Success.

This was a feeling Discourse to me, and made such an Impression on me, that I secretly resolv'd, that when I came to Baldivia, I would go up with this sincere Spaniard (for so I thought him to be, and so I found him) and would be an Eye-Witness to the Discovery, which, I thought, was made to my Hand, and which I found now, I could make more effectual than by all the Attempts I was like to make by second Hand.

From this Time I treated the Spaniard with more than ordinary Courtesy, and told him, if I was not Captain of a great Ship, and had not a Cargo of other Gentlemens Estates, he had said so much of those Things, that I should be tempted to give him a Visit, as he had desired, and see those monstrous Mountains of the Andes.

He told me, that if I would do him so much Honour, I should not be oblig'd to any long Stay; that he would procure Mules for me at Baldivia, and that I should go, not to his House only, but to the Mountain itself, and see all that I desir'd, and be back again in 14 Days at the farthest. I shook my Head, as if it could not be, but he never left importuning me; and once or twice, as if I had been afraid to venture myself with him, he told me, he would send for his two Sons, and leave them in the Ship as Hostages for my Safety.

I was fully satisfy'd as to that Point, but did not let him know my mind yet; but every Day we dwelt upon the same Subject, and I travell'd thro' the Mountains and Valleys so dully, in every Day's Discourse, with him, that when I afterwards came to the Place we had talk'd of, it was as if I had look'd over them in a Map before.

I ask'd him, if the Andes were a mere Wall of Mountains, contiguous and without Intervals and Spaces like a Fortification or Boundary to a Country? Or, Whether they lay Promiscuous and distant from one another? And, Whether there lay any Way over them into the Country beyond them.

He smil'd when I talk'd of going over them: He told me, they were so infinitely high, that no human Creature could live upon the Top; and withal so steep, and so frightful, that if there was even a Pair of Stairs up on one Side, and down on the other, no Man alive would dare to mount up, or venture down. But

But that, as for the Notion of the Hills being contiguous, like a Wall that had no Gates, that was all fabulous; that there were several fair Entrances in among the Mountains, and large, pleasant, and fruitful Valleys among the Hills, with pleasant Rivers and Numbers of Inhabitants, and Cattle and Provisions of all Sorts; and that some of the most delightful Places to live in, that were in the whole World, were among those Valleys, in the very Center of the Highest and most Dreadful Mountains.

Well, said I, Seignior, but how do they go out of one Valley into another; And whither do they go at last? He answer'd me, those Valleys are always full of pleasant Rivers and Brooks, which fall from the Hills, and are form'd generally into one principal Stream to every Vale; and that as these must have their Outlets on one Side of the Hills, or on the other, so, following the Course of those Streams, one is always sure to find the Way out of one Valley into another, and at last, out of the whole into the open Country; so that it was very frequent to pass from one Side to the other of the whole Body of the Mountains, and not go much higher up Hill, or down Hill, compared to the Hills in other Places. It was true, he said, there was no abrupt visible parting in the Mountains, that should seem like a Way cut through from the Bottom to the Top, which would be, indeed, frightful; but that as they pass from some of the Valleys to others, there are Ascents and Descents, Windings and Turnings, Sloping up, and Sloping

down, where we may stand on those little Ridges, and see the Waters on one Side run to the West, and on the other Side to the East.

I ask'd him, what Kind of a Country was on the other Side? and how long Time it would take up to go through from one Side to the other? He told me, there were Ways, indeed, that were more mountainous and uneasy, in which Men kept upon the Sides or Declivity of the Hills; in which the Natives would go, and guide others to go, and so might pass the whole Ridge of the Andes in eight or nine Days; but that those Ways were esteem'd very dismal, lonely and dangerous, because of wild Beasts; but that through the Valleys, the Way was easy and pleasant, and perfectly safe, only farther about; and that those Ways a Man might be 16 or 17 Days going through.

I laid up all this in my Heart, to make use of as I should have Occasion; but I acknowledge, that it was surprizing to me, as it was so perfectly agreeing with the Notion that I always entertained of those Mountains, of the Riches of them, the Facility of Access to and from them, and the easy Passage from one Side to another.

Well, Seignior, says he, we will not be in haste, or view it by halves; for it wild and uncouth Places will be a Diversion to you, I promise myself your Curiosity shall be fully gratify'd; but as to extraordinary Things, Rarities in Nature, and surprizing Incidents which Foreigners expect, I cannot say much to that. However,

However, what think you, Seignior, says he, if we should take a Tour into the Entrance of the Hills, which I shew'd you the other Day, and look upon the Gate of this Gulph? Perhaps your Curiosity may be satisfy'd with the first Day's Prospect, which, I assure you, will be none of the most pleasant, and you may find yourself sick of the Enterprize.

I told him, no; I was so resolv'd upon the Attempt, since he, who, I was satisfy'd, would not deceive me, had represented it as so feazible, and especially since he had offer'd to conduct me through it, that I would not, for all the Gold that was in the Mountains, lay it aside. He shook his Head at that Expression, and smiling at the Doctor, says he, this Gentleman little thinks that there is more Gold in these Mountains, nay, even this Part where we are, there is now above Ground in the whole World: Partly understanding what he said, I answer'd, my Meaning was, to let him see, that nothing could divert me from the Purpose of viewing the Place, unless he himself forbid me, which, I hop'd he would not; and that as for looking a little Way into the Passage, to try if the Horror of the Place would put a Check to my Curiosity, I would not give him that Trouble, seeing the more terrible and frightful, the more difficult and unpracticable it was, provided it could be master'd at last, the more it would please me to attempt and overcome it.

Nay, nay, Seignior, said he pleasantly, there's nothing difficult or impracticable in it, nor is it any thing

but what the Country-People, and even some of our Nation, perform every Day; and that, not only by themselves, either for Sport in Pursuit of Game, but even with Drovers of Cattle, which they go with from Place to Place, as to a Market, or a Fair; and, therefore, if the Horror of the Clifts and Precipices, the Noises of the Volcanos, the Fire, and such Things as you may see and hear above you, will not put a Stop to your Curiosity, I assure you, you shall not meet with any thing unpassable or impracticable below, nor any thing but what, with the Assistance of God, and the Blessed Virgin (and then he crossed himself, and so we did all) we shall go chearfully over.

Finding, therefore, that I was thus resolutely bent upon the Enterprize, but not in the least guessing at my Design, he gave Order to have Servants and Mules provided, for Mules are much fitter to travel among the Hills than Horses; and in four Days he promised to be ready for a March.

I had nothing to do in all these four Days, but to walk abroad, and, as we say, look about me; but I took this Opportunity to give Instructions to my two Midshipmen, who were call'd my Servants, in what they were to do.

First, I charg'd them to make Landmarks, Bearings, and Beacons, as we might call them, upon the Points of the Rocks above them, and at every turning in the Way below them, also at the Reaches and Windings

ings of the Rivers or Brooks, Falls of Water, and every thing remarkable, and to keep each of them separate and distinct Journals of those Things; not only to find the Way back again by the same Steps; but that they might be able to find that Way afterwards by themselves, and without Guides, which was the Bottom and true Intent of all the rest of my Undertaking; and as I knew these were both capable to do it, and had Courage and Fidelity to undertake it, I had singled them out for the Attempt, and had made them fully acquainted with my whole Scheme, and, consequently, they knew the Meaning and Reason of my present Discourse with them: They promised not to fail to shew me a Plan of the Hills, with the Bearings of every Point, one with another, where every Step was to be taken, and every Turning to the Right Hand, or to the Left, and such a Journal, I believe, was never seen before, or since; but 'tis too long for this Place. I shall, however, take out the Heads of it as I go along, which may serve as a general Description of the Place.

The Evening of the fourth Day, as he had appointed, my Friend the Spaniard let me know, that he was ready to set out; and accordingly we began our Cavalcade: My Retinue consisted of six Men, and we had Mules provided for us; my two Midshipmen, as Servants, had two Mules given them for their Baggage: The Spaniard had six also, viz. His Gentleman, or, as I called him before, his *MAYOR DOMO*, on Horse-back, that is to say on Mule-back, with

Mules for his Baggage, and four Servants on Foot. Just before we set out, his Gentleman brought every one of us a Fuzee, and our two Servants, each a Harquebush, or short Musket, with Cartouches, Powder and Ball, and adjoynd a Pouch with small Shot, such as we call Swan-Shot, for Fowls, or Deer, as we saw Occasion.

I was as well pleased with this, as with any thing, because I had not so intire a Confidence in the Native Chilians, as he had; but I saw plainly, some Time after, that I was wrong in that, for nothing could be more honest, quiet, and free from Design, than those People, except the poor honest People where we dress'd up the King and Queen, as above.

We were late in the Morning before we got out, having all this Equipage to furnish, and travelling very gently, it was about two Hours before Sun-set, when we came to the Enterance of the Mountains, where, to my surprize, I found we were to go in upon a Level, without any Ascent, at least, that was considerable: We had, indeed, gone up upon a pretty sharp Ascent, for near two Miles, before we came to the Place.

The Entrance was agreeable enough, the Passage being near half a Mile broad. On the Left Hand, was a small River, whose Channel was deep, but the Water shallow, there having been but little Rain for some Time; the Water ran very rapid, and, as my Spaniard told me, was sometimes exceeding fierce; the Entrance lay inclining a little South, and was so straight; that we could see near a Mile before us; but the prodigious Height

Height of the Hill on both Sides, and before us, appearing one over another, gave such a Prospect of Horror, that, I confess, it was frightful at first to look on the stupendous Height of the Rocks: Every thing before us looking one higher than another, was amazing; and to see how, in some Places, they hung over the River, and over the Passage, it threaten'd a Man with being, some Time or other swallow'd up.

The Rocks and Precipices on our Right Hand, had, here and there vast Cliffs and Enterances, which look'd as if they had been different Thoroughfares; but when we came to look full into them, we could see them close up at the farther End, and go off in Slopes, and with Gullies made by the Water, which, in hasty Rains, came pouring down from the Hills, and which, at a Distance, made such Noises, as 'tis impossible to conceive, unless by having seen and heard the like; for the Water falling sometimes from a Height twenty times as high as the Monument, and, perhaps much more, and meeting in the Passage with many Dashes and Interruptions, 'tis impossible to describe how, the Sound crossing, and intertering, mingled itself, and the several Noises sunk one into another, increasing the Whole, as the many Waters joining, increas'd the mean Stream.

We enter'd this Passage about two Miles the first Night: After the first Length, which, as I said, held about three Quarters of a Mile, we turn'd away to the South, short on the Right Hand: the River leaving us, seem'd

to come through a very narrow, but deep hollow of the Mountains, where there was little more Breadth at the Bottom, than the Channel took up, though the Rocks gave back as they descended, as placed in several Stages, though all horrid and irregular, and we could see nothing but Blackness and Terror all the Way. I was glad our Way did not turn on that Side, but wonder'd, that we should leave the River, and the more, when I found, that in the Way we went, having first mounted gently a green pleasant Slope, when it declin'd again, we found, as it were, a new Rivulet began in the Middle, and the Water run S. E. or thereabouts: This made me begin to ask, if the Water went away into the new World beyond the Hills? My Patron smil'd, and said, no, Seigneur, not yet; we shall meet with the other River again very quickly; and so we found it the next Morning.

When we came a little farther, we found the Passage open, and we came to a very pleasant Plain, which declined a little gradually, widening to the Left, or East Side: On the Right Side of this we saw another vast Opening like the first, which went in about half a Mile, and then clos'd up as the first had done, sloping up to the top of the Hills a most monstrous, inconceivable Height.

My Patron stopping here, and getting down, or alighting from his Mule, gave him to his Man, and asking me to alight, told me, this was the last Night's Entertainment I was to meet with in the Andes, and hop'd I was prepared for it. I told him that,

I might very well Consent to accept of such Entertainment, in a Journey of my own contriving, as he was content to take upon Compliment to me.

I look'd round me, to see if there were any Huts or Cots of the Mountainiers thereabouts, but I perceived none; only I observ'd something like a House, and it was really a House of some of the said Mountainiers upon the Top of a Precipice as high from where we stood, as the Top of the Cupulo of St. Paul's, and I saw some living Creatures, whether Men or Women, could not tell, looking from thence down upon us: However, I understood afterwards, that they had Ways to come at their Dwelling, which were very easy and agreeable, and had Lanes and Plains where the fed their Cattle, and had every thing growing that they desir'd.

My Patron making a Kind of an Invitation to me to walk, took me up that dark Chasm, or opening on the Right Hand, which I have just mention'd: Here, Sir, said he, if you will venture to walk a few Steps, 'tis likely we may shew you some of the Product of this Country; but as it grew towards Night, he added, but I see it is too dark; perhaps we may do it in the Morning: And with this, we walked back towards the Place where we left our Mules and Servants, and when we came thither, there was a complete Camp fixed, three very handsome Tents made, and a Bar set up at a Distance, where the Mules were tied one to another to graze, and the Servants, and the Baggage, lay together with an open Tent over them.

My Patron led me into the first Tent, and told me, he was oblig'd to let me know, that I must make shift with that Lodging, the Place not affording any better.

Here we had Quilts laid very artificially and clever, for me and my three Comrades, and we lodg'd very comfortably; but before we came to that, we had the third Tent to go to, in which there was a very handsome Table, cover'd with all conveniencies, and, in a Word, with a cold Treat, that is to say cold roasted Mutton and Beef, very well dress'd; and after that, some potted or bak'd Venison, with Pickles, Conserves, and very fine Sweetmeats.

Here we eat very freely, but he bid us depend upon it, that we should not fare so well the next Night; and so it would be worse every Night, 'till we came to lie entirely at a Mountainier's; but he was better to us than he pretended.

In the Morning, we had our Chocolate as regularly as we used to have it in his own House, and we were up, and ready to travel in a Moment. We went winding now from the S. E. to the Left, 'till our Course look'd E. by N. when we came again to have the River in View. But I should have observ'd here, that my two Midshipmen, and two of my Patron Servants, had, by his Directions, been very early in the Morning, clambering up the Rocks in the Opening on the Right Hand, and had come back again about a Quarter of an Hour after we set out; when, missing my two Men, I enquir'd for them,

them, and my Patron said, they were coming; for, it, seems he saw them at a Distance, and so we halted for them.

When they were come almost up to us, he call'd to his Men in Spanish to ask if they had had *Una bon Vejo*? They answer'd, *Poco, Poco*: And when they came quite up, one of my Midshipmen shew'd me three or four small Bits of clean perfect Gold, which they had pick'd up in the Hills or Gullet where the Water trickl'd down from the Rocks; and the Spaniard told them, that had the had Time, they should have found much more, the Water being quite down, and No-body having been there since the last hard Rain. One of the Spaniards had three small Bits in his Hand also; I said nothing for the present, but charg'd my Midshipmen to mark the Place, and so we went on.

We follow'd up the Stream of this Water for three Days more, encamping every Night as before; in which time we pass'd by several such Openings into the Rocks, on either Side. On the fourth Day we had the Prospect of a very pleasant Valley and River below us on the North Side; keeping its Course almost in the Middle; the Valley reaching near four Miles in Length, and in some Places near two Miles broad.

This Sight was perfectly surprising, because here we found the Vale fruitful, level, and inhabited, there being several small Villages or Clusters of Houses, such as the Chilians live in, which are low Houses, covered with a Kind of Sedge, and shelter-

ed with little Rows of thick green Trees, of what Kind we knew not.

We saw no Way thro', nor which way we were to go; but saw it every where bounded with prodigious Mountains, look to which Side of the Valley we would: We kept still on the Right, which was now the South-East Side of the River, and, as we follow'd it up the Stream, it was still less than at first, and lessen'd every Step we went, because of the Number of Rills we left behind us; And here we encamp'd the fifth Time, and all this while the Spanish Gentleman victualled us: Then we turned again to the Right, where we had a new and beautiful Prospect of another Valley, as broad as the other, but not above a Mile in Length.

After we were thro' this Valley, my Patron rides up to a poor little Cottage of a Chilian Indian, without any Ceremony, and calling us all about him, told us, that there we would go to Dinner: We saw a smoak indeed in the House, rather than come out of it; and it smothered thro' a Hole in the Roof instead of a Chimney: However to this House, as to an Inn, my Patron had sent away Mayor Domo and another Servant, and there, they were as busy as two Cooks, boiling and stewing Goat's Flesh, and Fowls, making up Soup, Broth, and such Hodge-Podge, as it seems they were us'd to provide, and which, however homely the Cottage was, we found very savoury and good.

Immediately a loose Tent was pitch'd, and we had our Table set up, and

and Dinner serv'd in, and within about two Hours, we had eaten it repos'd ourselves after it (as the Custom there is) and were ready to travel again.

I had Room all this while to observe, and wonder at the admirable Structure of this Place, which may serve in my Opinion, for the eighth Wonder of the World; that is say, supposing there were but Seven before. We had in the Middle of the Day, indeed, a very hot Sun, and the Reflections from the Mountains made it still hotter; but the Height of the Rock on every Side began to cast long Shadows before Three o'Clock, except where the Openings look'd towards the West, and as soon as those Shadows reach'd us, the cool Breezes of the Air came naturally on, drawing every Way exceeding pleasant and refreshing.

The Place we were in, was green and flourishing, and the Soil well cultivated by the poor industrious Chilians, who liv'd here in perfect Solitude, and pleas'd with their Liberty from the Tyranny of the Spaniards, who very seldom visited them and never molested them, being pretty much out of their Way, except when they came from Hunting and Diversion; and then they used the Chilians always civilly, because they were oblig'd to them for their Assistance in their Diversions; the Chilians of those Valleys being very active, strong, and nimble Fellows.

By this Means, most of them are furnish'd with Fire-Arms, Powder and Shot and were very good Marks-Men but as to Violence against any Body they entertain'd

no Thought of the Kind, as I could perceive, but were content with their Way of Living, which was easy and free.

The Tops of the Mountains here, the Valleys being so large, were much plainer to be seen, than where the Passages were narrow; for there the Height was so great, that we could see nothing. Here, at several Distances (the Rocks towering one over another) we might see Smoak come out of some, Snow lying upon others, Trees and Bushes growing upon others; and Goats, Wild-Asses, and other Creatures, which we could hardly distinguish, running about on others.

When we had pass'd thro' this second Valley, I perceiv'd we came to a narrow Passage, and something like the first; the Entrance into it indeed was smooth, and about a Quarter of a Mile broad, and it went Winding away to the North, and then again turn'd round to the N. E. afterwards almost due East, and then to the S. E. and so to S. S. E. and this frightful narrow Straight, with the hanging Rocks almost closing together on the Top, whose Height we could neither see or guess at, continued about three Days Journey more, most of the Way ascending gently upwards: And as to the River, it was by this Time quite lost; but we might see, that on any Occasion of Rain, or of the Melting of the Snow upon the Mountains; there was a Hollow in the Middle of the Valley, thro' which the Water made its Way, the Hills were full of the like Gullies, made by the Violence of the Rain, where, not the Earth only, but the Rocks themselves, even the very Stone seem'd to be worn and penetrated by the continual Fall of the Water.

Here

Here my Patron shew'd me, that in the Hollow, which I mention'd in the Middle of the Way, and at the Bottom of those Gullies, or Places worn, as above, in the Rocks, there were often found Pieces of Gold, and sometimes, after a Rain, very great Quantities; and that there were few of the little Chilian Cottages, which I had seen, where they had not sometimes a Pound or Two of Gold Dust, and Lumps of Gold by them; and he was mistaken, if I was willing to tarry, and make the Experiment, if we did not find some, even then, in a very little Search.

The Chilian Mountaneer, at whose House we had stopp'd, to dine, had gone with us, and he hearing my Patron say thus, runs presently to the hollow Channel in the Middle; there was a Kind of a Fall, or Break in it, where the Water by falling, perhaps, two or three Foot, had made a little Place deeper than the rest; and which, tho' there was no Water then running, yet had Water in it, perhaps the Quantity of a Barrel or two: Here, with the Help of two of the Servants, and a Kind of Scoop, he presently threw out the Water, with the Sand, and whatever was at Bottom among it, into the ordinary Water-Course; the Water falling this hard, every Scoop-full upon the Sand or Earth that came out of the Scoop before it, wash'd a great deal of it away; and among that which remain'd, we might plainly see little Lumps of Gold shining as big as Grains of Sand, and sometimes one or two a little bigger.

This was Demonstration enough to

us; I took up some small Grains of it, about the Quantity of half a Quarter of an Ounce, and left my Midshipmen to take up more, and they could scarce see their Way to overtake us, and brought away about two Ounces in all, the Chilian and the Servants very freely given them all they found.

When we had travell'd about nine Miles more in this winding frightful narrow Way, it began to grow towards Night, and my Patron talk'd of taking up our Quarters as we had before; but his Gentleman put him in Mind of a Chilian, one of their old Servants, who liv'd in a Turning among the Mountains, about half a Mile out of our Way, and where we might be accommodated again with the Helps of a House, and Place, at least, for our Cookery: Very true, says my Patron, we will go thither, and there, Seignior, says he, turning to me, you shall see an Emblem or complete Felicity, even in the Middle of this Place of Horror; and you shall see a Prince greater, and more truly so, than King Philip, who is the greatest Man in the World.

Accordingly we went softly on, his Gentleman having advanc'd before, and, in about half a Mile, we found a Turning or Opening on our Left, where we beheld a deep, large Valley, almost Circular, and of about a Mile Diameter, and abundance of Houses, or Cottages, interspers'd all over it, so that the whole Valley look'd like an inhabited Village, and the Ground like a planted Garden.

We, who, as I said, had been for some

some Miles ascending upwards, were so high above them, that the low Valley look'd, as the Low Lands in England look below Bok-Hill, in Surrey; and I began to ask, how we should get down? But as we were come into a wider Space than before, so we had more Day-Light; for though the hollow Way had rendred it near dusk before, now it was almost clear Day again.

Here we parted with the first Chilian that I mentioned, and I order'd one of my Midshipmen to give him a Hat, and a Piece of black Bays, enough to make him a Cloak, which so oblig'd the Man that he knew not what Way to testify his Joy: But I knew what I was doing in this; and I ordered my Midshipman to do it, that he might make his Acquaintance with him against another Time, and it was not a Gift ill-bestow'd, as will appear in its Place.

We were now oblig'd to quit our Mules, who all took up their Quarters at the Top of the Hill, while we, by Footings made in the Rocks, descended as we might say, down a Pair of Stairs of half a Mile long, but with many plain Places between, like Foot paces, for the Ease of going and coming.

Thus winding and turning, to avoid the Declivity of the Hills, we came very safe to the Bottom, where my Patron's Gentleman, and our new Landlord, that was to be, came to pay his Compliment to us.

He was dress'd in a Jerkin made of an Otter Skin, like a Doublet, a Pair of

long Spanish Breeches of Leather, dress'd after the Spanish Fashion, Green, and very soft, and which look'd very well, but what the Skin was, I could not guess; he had over it a Mantle, of a Kind of Cotton dyed in two or three grave brown Colours, and thrown about him like a Scotchman's Plaid; he had Shoes of a particular Make, tied on like Sandals, flat-beeled, no Stockings, his Breeches hanging down below the Calf of his Leg, and his Shoes lacing up above his Ankle; he had on a Cap of the Skin of some small Beast like a Rocoon, with a Bit of the Tail hanging out from the Crown of his Head backward, a long Pole in his Hand; and a Servant, as oddly dress'd as himself, carried his Gun; he had neither Spado nor Dagger.

When our Patron came up, the Chilian stepped forward, and made him three very low Bows, and then they talked together, not in Spanish, but in a Kind of Mountain Jargon, some Spanish, and some Chilian, of which I scarce understood one Word: After a few Words, I understood he said something of a Stranger come to see, and then, I suppose, added, the Passages of the Mountains; then the Chilian came towards me, made in Spanish: As soon as he had said that, he turns to his Barbarian, I mean his Servant, for he was as ugly a look'd Fellow as ever I saw, and taking his Gun from him, presented it to me, my Patron bad me take it, for he saw me a little at a Loss what to do, telling me, that as it was the greatest Compliment that a Chilian could pay to me, he would be very ill pleased, and out of Humour, if it was not accepted, and would think we did not care to be friendly with him.

As we had given this Chilian no Notice of our coming, no, not a Quarter of an Hour, we could not expect great

great Matters of Entertainment, and, as we carried our Provision with us, we did stand in much need of it; but we had no Reason to complain.

This Man's Habitation was all the same as the rest; low, and covered with a Sedge, or a Kind of Reed, which we found grew very plentifully in the Valley where he liv'd; he had several Pieces of Ground round his Dwelling, inclosed with Stone Walls, made very artificially with small Stones, and no Mortar; these inclosed Grounds were planted with several Kinds of Garden-stuff for his Household, such as Plaintains, Spanish Cabbages, Green Cocoa, and other Things of the Growth of their own Country, and two of them with European Wheat.

He had five or six Apartments in his House, every one of them had a Door into the Air, and into one another, and two of them were very large and decent, had long Tables on one Side made after their own Way, and Benches to sit to them like our Country Peoples long Tables in England, and Mattresses like Couches all along the other Side, with Skins of several Sorts of wild Creatures laid on them to repose on in the Heat of the Day, as is the Usage among the Spaniards.

Our People set up their Tents and Beds abroad as before; but my Patron told me, the Chilian would take it very ill, if he and I did not take up our Lodging in his House, and we had two Rooms provided very magnificent in their Way. The Mattrets we lay on, had a large Ca-

nopy over it, spread like the Crown of a Tent, and cover'd with a large Piece of Cotton, white as Milk, and which came round every Way like a Curtain; so that, if it had been in the open Field, it would have been a complete Covering; the Bed, such as it was, might be as hard as a Quilt, and not more, and the Covering was of the same Cotton as the Curtain-work, which it seems, is the Manufacture of the Chilian Women, and is made very dextrously; it look'd wild, but was pleasant enough, and proper to the Place; so I slept very comfortably in it.

But, I must confess, I was surpriz'd at the Aspect of Things in the Night here. I was, as I told you above, near Night when we came to this Man's Cottage (Palace I should have call'd it) and while we were taken our Repast, which was very pretty, it grew quite Night; we had Wax Candles brought in for Light, which it seems, my Patron's Man had provided; and the Place had so little Communication with the Air by Windows, that we saw nothing of what was without Doors.

After Supper, my Patron turns to me, come, Seignior, said he, pray prepare yourself to take a Walk: What, in the Dark, said I, in such a Country as this? No, no, says he, it is never dark here, you are now come to the Country of everlasting Day: What think you? Is not this Elifum? I do not understand you, says I but you, will presently, says he, when I shall shew you, that 'tis now lighter Abroad, than when we came in. Soon after this, some of the Servants open'd the Door that went into the next Room, and the Door

Door of that Room, which open'd into the Air, stood open from whence a Light of Fire shone into the outer Room, and so farther into ours: When are they burning there, says I to my Patron? adding, I hope you will not be surpriz'd; so he led me out to that Door.

But who can express the Thoughts of a Man's Heart, coming on a sudden into a Place where the whole World seem'd to be of a light Fire, the Valley was on one Side so exceeding bright the Eye could scarce bare to look at it; the Sides of the Mountains were shining like the Fire itself; the Flame from the Top of the Mountain on the other Side, casting its Light directly upon them, from thence the Reflection into other Parts look'd Red, and more terrible; for the first was white and clear, like the Light of the Sun; but the other being, as if it were, a Reflection of Light mix'd with some dark Cavities, represented the Fire of a Fernice; and, in short, it might well be said, here was no Darknefs: But, certainly, at the first View it gives no Traveller any other Idea than that of being at the very Entrance into Eternal Horror.

All this while there was no Fire, that is to say, no real Flame to be seen, only, that where the Flame was, it shone clearly into the Valley; but the Volcano, or Volcano's, from whence the Fire issued out (for it seems there were no less than three of them, tho' at the Distance of some Miles from one another) were on the South and East Sides of the Valley, which was so much on that Side where we were, that we could see nothing but the Light, neither on the other Side, could they see any more, it seems, than just the Top of

the Flame; not knowing any Thing of the Places from whence it issued out, which no mortal Creature, no, not of the Chilians themselves, were ever hardy enough to go near; nor would it be possible if any could attempt it, the Tops of the Hills, for many Leagues about them, being covered with new Mountains of Ashes and Stones, which are daily cast out of the Mouths of those Volcano's, by which, they grew every Day higher than they were before, and which would overwhelm not only Men, but whole Armies of Men, if I should venture to come near them.

When first we came into the long narrow Way I mentioned last, I observed, that, as I thought, the Wind blew very hard aloft among the Hills, and that it made a Noise like Thunder, which I thought nothing of, but as a Thing usual: But now, when I came to this terrible Sight, and that I heard the same Thunder, yet found the Air calm and quiet, I soon understood, that it was a continued Thunder, occasioned by the Roaring of the Fire in the Bowels of the Mountains.

It was some time, you suppose, before a Traveller, unacquainted with such Things, could make them familiar to him; and tho' the Horror and Surprise might abate, after proper Reflections on the Nature and Reason of the Thing, yet I had a Kind of Astonishment upon me for a great while; every different Place to which I turned my Eye, presented me with a new Scene of Horror; I was, for a while, frighted at the Fire being, as it were, over my Head, for I could see nothing of it; but that

that the Air look'd as if it were all on Fire, and I could not persuade myself but it would cast down the Rocks and Mountains on my Head: But they laugh'd me out of that Part.

After a while, I asked them, if these Volcano's did not cast out a kind of Liquid Fire, as I had seen an Account of on the monstrous Eruptions at Mount *Ætna*, which cast out a prodigious Stream of Fire, and ran eight Leagues into the Sea? Upon putting this Question to my Patron, he ask'd the Chilian, How long ago it was since such a Stream, calling it by a Name of their own, ran Fire? He answer'd it ran now, and if we were disposed to walk three Furlongs; we should see it.

He said little to me, but ask'd me if I care'd to walk a little Way by this Kind of Light? I told him, it was a surprizing Place we were in, but I suppos'd he would lead me into no Danger; he said, he would assure me he would lead me into no Danger: That these Things were very familiar to them; but that I might depend there was no Hazard, and that the Flames which gave all this Light, were fix or seven Miles off, and some of them more: We walk'd along the Plain of the Valley about half a Mile, when another great Valley opening to the Right, and gave us a more dreadful Prospect than any we had seen before; for at the farther End of this second Valley, but at the Distance of about three Miles from where we stood we saw a livid Stream of Fire come running down the Sides of the Mountain for near three Quar-

ters of a Mile in Length, running like melted Metal into a Mould, or out of a Furnace, 'till, I suppos'd, as it came nearer the Bottom, it cool'd itself.

Beyond this, over the Summit of a prodigious Mountain, we could see the Tops of the clear Flame of a Volcano, a dreadful one no doubt, could we have seen it all; and from the Mouth of which, it suppos'd this Stream of Fire came, tho' the Chilian assur'd us, that the Fire itself was eight Leagues off, and that the Liquid Fire which we saw, came out of the Side of the Mountain, and was two Leagues off the great Volcano itself, running like Metal out of a Furnace.

They told me, there was a great deal of melted Gold ran down with the other inflam'd Earth in that Stream, and that much Gold was afterwards found there, but this I was to take upon Trust.

This Sight was as you will easily suppose, best at a Distance, and, indeed, I had enough of it; as for my two Midshipmen, they were almost frighted out of their Resolutions of going any farther in this horrible Place, and when we came back, they came mighty seriously to me, and begg'd of me, for God's sake, not to venture any farther upon the Faith, of these Spaniards, for that they would certainly carry us all into some Mischief or other, and betray us.

I bid them be easy, for I saw nothing in it all, that look'd like Treachery:

chery:

chery : That it was true, indeed, it was a terrible Place to look on, but it seems to be nothing but what was natural and familiar there, and we should be soon out of it. They told me very seriously, that they believ'd it was the very Mouth of Hell, and that in short, they were not able to bear it, and begg'd of me to go back: I told them, no, I could not think of going back; but if they could not endure it, I would give consent that they might go back in the Morning: However, we went, for the present, to the Chilian's House again, where we got a plentiful Draught of Chilian Wine, for my Patron had taken Care to have a good Quantity of it with us, and in the Morning my two Midshipmen, who got very drunk over Night, had Courage enough to venture forward again; for the Light of the Sun put quite another Face upon Things, and nothing of the Fire was then to be seen, only the Smoak.

All our Company lodg'd in the Tents here, but I and my Patron the Spaniard, who lodg'd within the Chilian's House, as I told you: This Chilian was a great Man among the Natives, and all the Valley I spoke of, which lay round his Dwelling, was call'd his own; he liv'd in a State of perfect Tranquility, neither enjoying or coveting any thing but what was Necessary, and wanting nothing that was so; he had Gold, as it might be said, for picking it up off of the Dunghill, for it was found in all the little Gullies and Rills of Water, which, as I have said, came down from the Mountains on every Side; yet I did not find, that he troubled

himself to lay up any great Quantity more than serv'd to go to Villa Rica, and buy what he wanted for himself and Family; he had, it seems, a Wife, and some Daughters, but no Sons; these liv'd in a separate House, about a Furlong from this where he lived, and were kept there as a Family by themselves, and if he had had any Sons, they would have liv'd with him.

He did not offer to go with us any Part of our Way, as the other had done? but, having entertain'd us with great Civility, took his Leave. I caus'd one of my Midshipmen to make him a Present, when we came away, of a Piece of black Bays, enough to make a Cloak, as I did the other, and a Piece of blue English Serge, enough to make him a Jerkin and Breeches, which he excepted as a great Bounty.

We set out again, though not very early in the Morning, having, as I said, sat up late, and drank freely over Night, and we found, that after we had been gone to sleep, it had rained very hard, and though the Rain was over before we went out, yet the falling of the Water from the Hills, made such a confus'd Noise, and was echo'd so backward and forward from all Sides, that it was like a strange Mixture of distant Thunder, and though we knew the Causes, yet it could not but be surprizing to us for a while.

However, we set forward, the Way under Foot being pretty good; and first we went up the Steps again, by which we had come down (our last Host waiting on us thither) and there I gave him back his Gun, for he would not take it before. In

In this Valley, which was the pleasantest by Day, and the most dismal by Night, that ever I saw, I observ'd abundance of Goats, as well tame in the Inclosures, as wild upon the Rocks; and we found afterwards, that the last were perfectly wild, and to be had, like those of Juna Fernandes, by any Body that could catch them; my Patron sent off two of his Men, just as a Huntsman casts off his Hounds, to go and catch Goats, and they brought us in three, which they shot in less than half a Hour, and these we carried with us for our Evening's Supply, for we made no Dinner this Day, having fed heartily in the morning about Nine, and had Chocolate two Hours before that.

We travell'd now along the narrow, winding Passage, which I mention'd before, for about four Hours, 'till I found, that tho' we had ascend'd but gently, yet, that as we had done so for almost twenty Miles together, we were got up to a frightful Height, and I began to expect some very difficult Descent on the other Side; but we were easly made about Two o'Clock, when the Way not only declin'd again to the East, but grew wider, though with frequent Turnings and Windings about, so that we could seldom see above half a Mile before us: We went on thus pretty much upon a Level, now rising, now falling; but still I found that we were a very great Height from our first Entrance, and as to the Running of the Water, I found that it flow'd neither East nor West, but run all down the little Turnings that we frequently met with on the North Side of our Way, which my Patron told me, went all into the great Valley where we saw the Fire, and so went away by a general Channel North West 'till it found its Way out into the open Country of Chili, and so to the South Seas.

We were come to another Night's Lodging, which we were oblig'd to take up with on the green Grass, as we did the first Night; but by the Help of our Provéditeur-General, my Patron, we fared very well, our Goats-Flesh being reduc'd into so many Sorts of Venison, that none of us could distinguish it from the best Sort of Venison we ever tasted.

Here we slept without any of the frightful the Things we saw Night before, except, that we might see the Light of the Fire, in the Air, at a great Distance, like a great City on Fire, but that gave us no Disturbance at all.

In the Morning our two Hunters shot a Deer, or rather a young Fawn, before we were a wake, and this Part of our Travel, and thus we were provided for Dinner even before Breakfast-time; as for our Breakfast, that is to say, about a Point of Chocolate.

We set out very merrily in the Morning, and we that were Englishmen, could not refrain smiling at one another, to think how we pass'd through a Country where the Gold lay in every Ditch, as we might call it, and never troubled ourselves so much as to stoop to take it up; so certain is it, that 'tis easy to be plac'd in a Station of Life where that very Gold (the heaping up of which, is here made the the main Business of Man's living in the World) would be of no Value, and not worth taking off from the Ground: nay, not of Signification enough to make a Present of, for that was the Case here. Two or three Yards of Colchester Bays, a coarse rug-like Manufacture, worth in London, about Fifteen Pence Half-penny per Yard, was here a Present for a Man of Quality, when for

a Handful of Gold-Dust, the same Person would scarce say I thank you; or, perhaps, would think himself not kindly treated to have it offered him.

We travell'd this Day pretty smartly, having rested at Noon about two Hours, as before, and, by my Calculation, went about 22 English Miles in all: about Five o'Clock in the Afternoon, we came into a broad, plain, open Place, where, though it was not properly a Valley, yet we found it lay very level for a good Way together. Our Way lying almost E. S. E. after we had marched so about two Miles, I found the Way go evidently down Hill, and in half a Mile more, to our singular Satisfaction, we found the Water from the Mountains ran plainly Eastward, and, consequently, to the North-Sea.

We saw at a Distance, several Huts, or Houses of the Mountainers Inhabitants, but we came near none of them, but kept on our Way, going down two or three pretty steep Places, not at all dangerous, though something difficult.

We encamp'd again the next Night, as before, and still our good Caterer had Plenty of Food for us: But I observ'd, that the next Morning, when we set forward, our Tents were left standing, the Baggage-Mules tied together to graze, and our Company lessened by all my Patron's Servants, which, when I enquired about he told me, he hop'd we should have good Quarters quickly without them. I did not understand him for the present, but it unriddled itself soon after; for though we travelled four Days more in that narrow Way, yet he always

found us Lodging at the Cottages of the Mountainers. The sixth Day we went all Day up Hill, at last, on a sudden, the Way turn'd short East and open'd into a vast wide Country. boundless to the Eye every Way, and deliver'd us intirely from the Mountains of the Andes, in which we had wandred so long.

Any one may guess what an agreeable Surprise it was to us, to whom it was the main End of our Travels. We made no Question that this was the open Country extended to the North, or Atlantick Ocean, but how far it was thither, or what Inhabitants it was possessed by, what Travelling, what provisions to be found by the Way, what Rivers to pass, and whether any navigable or not; this our Patron himself could not tell us one Word of; owning frankly to us, that he had never been one step farther than the Place where we then stood; and that he had been there only once to satisfy his Curiosity, as I did now.

I told him, that if I had liv'd where he did, and had had Servants and Provisions at command, as he had, it would have been impossible for me to have restrain'd my Curiosity so far, as not to have search'd through that whole Country to the Sea-Side long ago: I told him, it seem'd to me a pleasant fruitful Soil, and no doubt, capable of Cultivations and Improvements; and if it had been only to have possessed such a Country in his Catholick Majesty's Name, it must have been worth while to undertake the Discovery for the Honour of Spain; and that there could be no room

room to question, but his Catholick Majesty would have honour'd him that should have undertaken such a Thing, with some particular Mark of his Favour, which might be of Consequence to him and his Family.

He told me, that as to that, the Spaniards seem'd always to have more Dominions in America, then they could keep, and much more than they were able to the Benefit of, and still more infinitely than they could improve, and especially in those Parts call'd South America.

That it was next to miraculous, that they could keep the Possession where they were, and were not the Natives so utterly destitute of Support from any other Part of the World, as not to be able to have either Arms or Ammunition put into their Hands, it would be impossible, since, I might easily see, they were Men that wanted not Strength of Body, or Courage; and it was evident, they did want Numbers, seeing they were already 16,000 Natives to one Spaniard, taking the whole Country from one End to the other.

He went on, then you see, Seignior, says he, how far we are from Improvement in that Part of the Country which we possess, and many more which, you may be sure, are among these vast Mountains, and which we never discover'd, seeing all these Valleys and Passages among the Mountains, where Gold is to be had in such Quantities, and with so much Ease, that every poor Chilian gathers it up with their Hands, and may have as much as he pleases, are all left open

naked, and unregarded, in the Possession of the wild Mountaniers, who are Heathens and Savages; and the Spaniards you see, says he, are so few and these few so indolent, so slothfull, and so satisfy'd with the Gold they get of the Chilians for Things of small Value in Trade, that all this vast Treasure lies unregarded by them. Nay, adds he is it not very odd to observe, that when for our Diversion we come out into the Hills, and among these Places where you see the Gold is so easily found, we come, as we call it, a Hunting, and divert ourselves more with shooting wild Parrots, or a Fawn or two, for which also, we ride, and run, and make our Servants weary themselves more then they would in fishing up the Gold among the Gullies and Holes that the Water makes in the Rocks, and more then would suffice to fine 50 nay 100 times the Value in Gold?

To what Purpose then should we seek the Possession of more Countries, who are already possessed of more Land then we can improve, and of more Wealth then we know what to do with, Perceiving me very attentive, he went on thus.

Were these Mountains, said he, valu'd in Europe, according to the Riches, to be found in them, the Viceroy would obtain Orders from the King, to have strong Forts erected at the Entrance in, and at the coming out of them, as well as on the Side of Chili, as here; and strong Garrisons maintain'd in them, to prevent foreign Nations landing, either on our Side in Chilia, or on this Side in the North Seas, and taking the Possession

Possession from us, he would then order 30,000 Slaves, Negroes, or Chilians, to be constantly employ'd not only in picking up what Gold might be found in the Channels of the Water, which might easily be formed into proper Receivers, so as that if any Gold wash'd from the Rocks, it should soon be found, and be secur'd, as that none of it would escape; also others, with Miners and Engineers, might search into the very Rocks themselves, and would, no doubt, find out such Mines of Gold, or rather secret Stores of it in these Mountains, as would be sufficient to enrich the World.

While we omit such Things as these, Seignior, says he, what signifies Spain making new Acquisitions, or the People of Spain seeking new Countries? This vast Tract of Land you see here, and some Hundreds of Miles every Way, which your Eye cannot reach to, is a fruitful, pleasant, and agreeable Piece of God's Creation; but perfectly uncultivated, and most of it uninhabited; and any Nation in Europe, that thinks fit to settle in it, are free to do so, for any thing we are able to do to prevent them.

But, Seignior, said I, does not his Catholick Majesty claim a Title to the Possession if it? And have the Spaniards no Governor over it? Nor any Ports or Towns, Settlements or Colonies in it, as is the Case here in Chili? Seignior replied he, the King of Spain is Lord of all America; as well that which he possesses, as that which he possesses not; that Right being given him by the Pope, in the Right

of his being a Christian Prince, making new Discoveries for propagating the Christian Faith among Infidels: How far that may pass for a Title among the European Powers, I know not I have heard, that it has always passed for a Maxim in Europe that no Country, which is not planted by any Prince or People, can be said to belong to them; and, indeed, I cannot say, but it seems to be rational, that no Prince should pretend to any Title to a Country where he does not think fit to plant, and to keep Possession; for if he leaves it free for any other Nation to come and possess; and this is the Reason why the former King of Spain did not dispute that Right of the French, to their Colonies of Mississippi and Canada or the Right of the English to the Caribbee Islands, or to their Colonies of Virginia and New England.

In like Manner from the Buenos Ayres, in the Rio de la Plata, which lies that Way, says he (pointing N. E.) to the Fretum Magellanicum which lies that Way (pointing S. E.) which comprehends a vast Number of Leagues, is call'd by us, *Costa Deserta*, being unpossessed by Spain, and disregarded of all our Nation: Neither is there one Spaniard in it; nevertheless you see how fruitful, how pleasant, and how agreeable a Climate it is; how apt for Planting and Peopling it seems to be; and, above all, what a Place of Wealth here would be behind them sufficient, and more than enough, both for them and us; for we should have no Reason to offer them any Disturbance; neither should we be in any Condition to do it, the Passages of the Mountains being but few and difficult

ficult, as you have seen, and our Numbers not sufficient to do any thing more than to block them up, to keep such People from breaking in upon our Settlements on the Coast of the South-Seas.

I ask'd him if these Notions of his were common among those of his Country who were settled in Chili and Peru? Or whether were his own private Opinions only? I told him, I believ'd the latter, because I found he acted in all his Affairs upon generous Principles, and was for propagating the Good of Mankind; but that I question'd whether their Governor of Old Spain, or the Sub Governor, and Viceroy of New Spain, acted upon those Notions or no; and since he had mention'd the Buenos Ayres, and the Rio de la Plata, I should take that as an Example, seeing the Spaniards would never suffer any Nation to set Foot in that great River, were so many Countries might have been discover'd and Colonies planted; though at the same Time, they had not possessed, or fully discover'd those Places themselves.

He answer'd me, smiling, Seignior, says he, you have given the Reason for this yourself in that very Part which you think is a Reason against it. We have a Colony at Buenos Ayres, and at the City of Ascension, higher up in the Rio de la Plata; and we are not willing to let any other Nation settle there, because we would not let them see how weak we are, and what a vast Extent of Land we possess there with a few Men: And this for two Reasons.

First, We are possessed of the Country,

and daily increassing there, and may, in Time, extend ourselves farther. The great River Parana, and Paraguay, being yet left for us to plant in farther, and therefore we keep the Possession.

Secondly, We have a Communication from thence with Peru. That great River La Plata rises at the City La Plata, and out of the Mountain Potosi in Peru, and a great Trade is carried on by that River; and it would be dangerous to let Foreigners into the Secret of that Trade, which they might entirely cut off; especially when they should find that small Numbers of Spaniards which are planted there to preserve it, seeing there are not 600 Spaniards in all the vast Country, which, by the Course of that River, is more than 1600 Miles in Length.

I confess, said I, these are just Grounds for your keeping the Possession of that River. They are so, said he, and the more, because of so powerful a Colony as the Portuguese have in the Brasils, which bound immediately upon it, and who are always incroaching upon it from the Land Side, and would gladly have a Passage up the Rio Parana to the Back of their Colony.

But here, Seignior, said he, the Case differs: For we neither take nor keep Possession here; neither have we one Spaniard, as I said, in the whole Country now before you; and therefore we call this Country *Coasta Deserte*; not that it is a Desert, as that Name is generally taken to signify a barren, sandy, dry Country on the contrary, the infinite, prodigious Encrease of the European black Cattle, which were brought by the Spaniards to the Buenos Ayres, and let run loose, is

a sufficient Testimony of the Fruitfulness and Richness of the Soil, their Number being such, that they kill above 20,000 of them in a Year, for nothing but the Hides which they carry away to Spain, leaving Flesh, though fat and wholesome, to perish on the Ground, or be devour'd by Birds of Prey.

And the Number is so great, notwithstanding all they destroy, that they are found to wander sometimes in Drovers of many Thousands together, over all the vast Country between the Rio de la Plata, the City of Ascension, and the Frontier of Peru, even down into the Country which you see before us, and up to the very Foot of these Mountains.

Well, said I, and is it not a great Pity, that all this Part of the Country, and in such a Climate as this is, should lie uncultivated, or uninhabited rather? For I understand there are not any great Numbers of People to be found among them.

It is true, added, he, there are some Notions of People spread about in this Country; but as the Terror of our People the Spaniards, drove them, at first from the Sea Coast towards these Mountains, so the greatest Part of them continue on this Side still; for towards the Coast it is very rare that they find any People.

I would have enquir'd of him about Rivers, and navigable Streams, which might be in this Country; but he told me frankly, that he could give no Account of that; only thus, that if any of the Rivers went away towards the North, they certainly

run all into the great Rio de la Plata; but that if they went East, or Southerly, they must go directly to the Coast, which was ordinarily called, as he said, La Costa Deserta, or, as by some, The Coast of Palagonia; that as to the Magnitude of those Rivers, he could say little, but that it could not be rational, but there must be some very considerable Rivers, and whose Streams must needs be capable of Navigation, seeing Abundance of Water must continually flow from the Mountains where we then were; and its being, at least, 400 Miles from the Sea Side, those small Streams must necessarily join together, and make large Rivers in the plain Country.

I had enough in this Discourse, fully to satisfy all my Curiosity, and sufficiently to heighten my Desire of making the farther Discoveries which I had in my Thoughts.

We pitch'd our little Camp here, and set down to our Repast; for I found, that tho' we were to go back to lodge, yet my Patron had taken Care we should be furnish'd sufficiently for Dinner, and have a good House to eat it in; that is to say, a Tent, as before.

The Place where we stood, tho' we had come down Hill for a great Way, yet seem'd very high from the ordinary Surface of the Country, and gave us, therefore, an exceeding fine Prospect of it, the Country declining gradually for near 10 Miles; and we thought, as well as the Distance of the Place would allow us, we saw

a great River, but, as I learned afterwards, it was rather a great Lake, than a River, which was supply'd by the smaller Rivers, or Rivulets, from the Mountains, which met there as in a great Recepticle of Waters, and out of this Lake, they all issued again in one River; of which I shall have Occasion to give a farther Account hereafter.

While we were at Dinner, I order'd my Midshipmen to take their Observations of every distant Object, and to look at every Thing with their Glasses; which they did and told me of this Lake; but my Patron could give me no account of it, having never been, as he said before, one Step farther that Way, than where we were. However, my Men shew'd me plainly, that it was a great Lake, and that there went a large River from it towards the E. S. E. and this was enough for me, for that Way lay all the Schemes I had laid.

I took this Opportunity to ask my Midshipmen first, if they had taken such Observations in their Passage of the Mountains, as that they were sure they could find their Way through to this Place again without Guides? They assur'd me they could.

Then I put it to them, whether they thought it might not be feasible to travel over that vast level Country to the North Seas? And to make a sufficient Discovery of the whole Country, so as that hereafter Englishmen coming to the Coast on the Side of the North Seas, might penetrate to these Golden Mountains and reap the

Benefit of the Treasure without going a Prodigious Length about Cape Horn, and the Terra del Fuego, which was always attended with innumerable Dangers; and without breaking through the Kingdom of Chili, and the Spaniards Settlements, which, perhaps, we might soon be at Peace with, and so be shut out that Way by our own Consent.

One of my Men began to speak of the Difficulties of such an Attempt; The Want of Provisions, and other Dangers which we should be expos'd to on the Way; but the other, a bold, brisk Fellow, told me, he made no Question, but it might easily be done, and especially because all the Rivers they should meet with would, of course, run along with us, so that we should be sure to have the Tide with us, as he call'd it: And at last he added, that he would be content to be one of those Men who should undertake it, provided he should be assur'd, that the Ships would not go away and pretended that they could not be found. I told him we would talk farther about it: That I had such a Thing in my Head, and I had a strong Inclination to undertake it myself; but that I could not answer it to leave the Ships, which depended so much upon my Care of the Voyage.

After some Talk of the Reasonableness of such an Undertaking, and the Methods of performing it, my second Midshipman began to come into it, and to think it was practicable enough, and added, that though he used some Cautions in his first hearing Proposals, yet, if he undertook that Enterprize, I should find, that he would do as much

much of his Duty in it, as another Man; and so he did at last, as will appear in its Place.

We were, by this Time, preparing to be satisfied with our Journey, and my Patron coming to me, and asking, if I was for returning? I told him, I could not say how many Days it would be before I should say I had enough of that Prospect, but that I would return when he pleas'd; only I had one Question to ask him, which was, whether the Mountains was as full of Gold on this Side, as they were on the Side of Chili?

As to that, Seignor, says he, the best Way to be certain, is to make a Trial, that you may be sure we do not speak without Book; so he call'd his Gentleman, and another Servant that was with him, and desir'd me to call my two Midshipmen, and speaking something to his own Servants first, in the Language of the Country, as I suppose, he turn'd to me, and said, come, let us set down and repose ourselves, and let them go all together, and see what they can do.

Accordingly they went away, and, as my Men told me afterwards, they search'd in the small Streams of Water, which they found running, and in some large Gullies or Channels, where they found little or no Water, running; but where, upon hasty Rains, great Shoots of Water had been us'd to run, and where Water stood still in the Holes and Falls, as I have describ'd once before on the like Occasion.

They had not been gone above an Hour, when I plainly heard my two

Englishmen Hollow, which I could easily distinguish from the Voices of any other Nation, and immediately I ran out of the Tent, Captain Merlotte followed, and I then saw one of my Midshipmen running towards us, so we went to meet him, and what with hollowing, and running, he could hardly speak; but recovering his Breath, said he come to desire me to come to them if I would see a Sight which I never saw in my Life. I was eager enough to go, so I went with him, and left Captain Merlotte to go back to the Tent to my Patron the Spaniard, and the Spanish Doctor, who had not so much Share in the Curiosity: He did so, and they follow'd fair and softly.

When we came to the Place, we saw such a Sight, indeed, as I never saw before; for there they were sitting down round a little Puddle, or Hole as I might call it, of Water, where in the Time of Rain, the Water running hastily from a Piece of the Rock, about two Foot higher than the rest, had made a Pit under it with the Fall like the Tail of a Mill, only much less.

Here they took up the Sand, or Gravel, with their Hands, and every Handful brought up with it such a Quantity of Gold, as was surprizing; for there they sat picking it out just as the Boys in London, that go with a Broom and a Hat, pick out old Iron, Nails, and Pins out of the Channels, and it lay as thick.

I stood and looked at them a while, and, it must be confessed, it was a pleasant Sight enough: But reflecting

reflecting immediately, that there was no End of this, and that we were only upon Enquiry, come away, says I, laughing, to my Men, and do not stand picking up of Trash there all Day: Do you know how far we have to our Lodging?

I can make no guess what Quantity might have been found here in Places, which had, for Hundreds of Years, wash'd Gold from the Hills, and, perhaps, never had a Man to come to pick any of it up before: But I was soon satisfied that here was enough, even to make all the World say they had enough and so I call'd off my People, and came away.

It seems, the Quantity of Gold which is thus wash'd down, is not small, since my Men, enquiring afterwards among the Chilians, heard them talk of a great Lake of Water which I mentioned just now that we saw at a Distance, which they call The Golden Lake, and where was, as they said, prodigious Quantities of it; not that our Men suppos'd any Gold was there in Mines or in the ordinary Soil, but that the Waters from the Hills, running with very rapid Currents at certain Times in the rainy Seasons, and after the Melting of the Snows, had carried the Gold so far as that Lake; and as it had been so, perhaps, from the Days of the General Deluge, no People ever applying themselves to gather the least Grain of it up again, it might well be increased to such a Quantity, as might intitle that Water to the Name of The Golden-Lake, and all the little Streams and Sluices of Water that run into it deserv'd the

Name of Golden-Rivers, as much as that of the Golden-Lake.

But my Business was to know, if the Gold was here, not to trouble myself to pick it up: My Views lay another Way, and my End was fully answer'd; so I came back to my Patron, and brought all my Men with me: You live in a Golden Country, Seignior, says I, my Men are stark mad to see so much Gold, and No-body to pick it up: Should the World know what Treasure you have here, I would not answer for it, that they should not flock hither in Armies, and drive you all away. They need not do that, Seignior, says he, for here is enough for them, and for us too.

We now pack'd up, and began our Return, but it was not without Regret that I return'd my Back upon this pleasant Country, the most agreeable Place, of its Kind, that ever I was at in all my Life, or ever shall be at again: A Country rich, pleasant, fruitful, wholesome, and capable of every Thing for the Life of Man, that the Heart could entertain a wish for.

But my present Work was to return, so we mounted our Mules, and had, in the mean Time, the Pleasure of contemplating what we had seen, and applying ourselves to such farther Measures as we had concerted among us. In about four Hours we return'd to our Camp, as I call'd it, and by the Way, we found, to our no little Pain, that though we had come down Hill easily, and insensible to the Opening, for some Miles, yet we had a hard pull up Hill to go back again: However, we reach'd to our Tents in good Time, and made our first Encampment with Pleasure enough,

much of his Duty in it, as another Man; and so he did at last, as will appear in its Place.

We were, by this Time, preparing to be satisfied with our Journey, and my Patron coming to me, and asking, if I was for returning? I told him, I could not say how many Days it would be before I should say I had enough of that Prospect; but that I would return when he pleas'd; only I had one Question to ask him, which was, whether the Mountains was as full of Gold on this Side, as they were on the Side of Chili?

As to that, Seignor, says he, the best Way to be certain, is to make a Trial, that you may be sure we do not speak without Book; so he call'd his Gentleman, and another Servant that was with him, and desir'd me to call my two Midshipmen, and speaking something to his own Servants first, in the Language of the Country, as I suppose, he turn'd to me, and said, come, let us set down and repose ourselves, and let them go all together, and see what they can do.

Accordingly they went away, and, as my Men told me afterwards, they search'd in the small Streams of Water, which they found running, and in some large Gullies or Channels, where they found little or no Water, running; but where, upon hasty Rains, great Shoots of Water had been us'd to run, and where Water stood still in the Holes and Falls, as I have describ'd once before on the like Occasion.

They had not been gone above an Hour, when I plainly heard my two

Englishmen Hollow, which I could easily distinguish from the Voices of any other Nation, and immediately I ran out of the Tent, Captain Merlotte followed, and I then saw one of my Midshipmen running towards us, so we went to meet him, and what with hollowing, and running, he could hardly speak; but recovering his Breath, said he come to desire me to come to them if I would see a Sight which I never saw in my Life. I was eager enough to go, so I went with him, and left Captain Merlotte to go back to the Tent to my Patron the Spaniard, and the Spanish Doctor, who had not so much Share in the Curiosity: He did so, and they follow'd fair and softly.

When we came to the Place, we saw such a Sight, indeed, as I never saw before; for there they were sitting down round a little Puddle, or Hole as I might call it, of Water, where in the Time of Rain, the Water running hastily from a Piece of the Rock, about two Foot higher than the rest, had made a Pit under it with the Fall like the Tail of a Mill, only much less.

Here they took up the Sand, or Gravel, with their Hands, and every Handful brought up with it such a Quantity of Gold, as was surprizing; for there they sat picking it out just as the Boys in London, that go with a Broom and a Hat, pick out old Iron, Nails, and Pins out of the Channels, and it lay as thick.

I stood and looked at them a while, and, it must be confessed, it was a pleasant Sight enough: But reflecting

reflecting immediately, that there was no End of this, and that we were only upon Enquiry, come away, says I, laughing, to my Men, and do not stand picking up of Trash there all Day: Do you know how far we have to our Lodging?

I can make no guess what Quantity might have been found here in Places, which had, for Hundreds of Years, wash'd Gold from the Hills, and, perhaps, never had a Man to come to pick any of it up before: But I was soon satisfied that here was enough, even to make all the World say they had enough and so I call'd off my People, and came away.

It seems, the Quantity of Gold which is thus wash'd down, is not small, since my Men, enquiring afterwards among the Chilians, heard them talk of a great Lake of Water which I mentioned just now that we saw at a Distance, which they call The Golden Lake, and where was, as they said, prodigious Quantities of it; not that our Men suppos'd any Gold was there in Mines or in the ordinary Soil, but that the Waters from the Hills, running with very rapid Currents at certain Times in the rainy Seasons, and after the Melting of the Snows, had carried the Gold so far as that Lake; and as it had been so, perhaps, from the Days of the General Deluge, no People ever applying themselves to gather the least Grain of it up again, it might well be increased to such a Quantity, as might intitle that Water to the Name of The Golden-Lake, and all the little Streams and Sluices of Water that run into it deterv'd the

Name of Golden-Rivers, as much as that of the Golden-Lake.

But my Business was to know, if the Gold was here, not to trouble myself to pick it up: My Views lay another Way, and my End was fully answer'd; so I came back to my Patron, and brought all my Men with me: You live in a Golden Country, Seignior, says I, my Men are stark mad to see so much Gold, and No-body to pick it up: Should the World know what Treasure you have here, I would not answer for it, that they should not flock hither in Armies, and drive you all away. They need not do that, Seignior, says he, for here is enough for them, and for us too.

We now pack'd up, and began our Return, but it was not without Regret that I return'd my Back upon this pleasant Country, the most agreeable Place, of its Kind, that ever I was at in all my Life, or ever shall be at again: A Country rich, pleasant, fruitful, wholesome, and capable of every Thing for the Life of Man, that the Heart could entertain a wish for.

But my present Work was to return, so we mounted our Mules, and had, in the mean Time, the Pleasure of contemplating what we had seen, and applying ourselves to such farther Measures as we had concerted among us. In about four Hours we return'd to our Camp, as I call'd it, and by the Way, we found, to our no little Pain, that though we had come down Hill easily, and insensible to the Opening, for some Miles, yet we had a hard pull up Hill to go back again: However, we reach'd to our Tents in good Time, and made our first Encampment with Pleasure enough,

enough, for we were very weary with the Fatigue of a hard Day's Journey.

The next Day we reach'd our good Chilian's Mansion House, or Palace, for such it might be call'd, considering the Place, and considering the Entertainment; for now we had some Time to provide for us, knowing we would come back again.

He met us with three Mules, and two Servants, about a Mile before we came to the Descent going down to his House, of which I took Notice before, and this he did to guide us away round to his House, without going down those uneasy Steps; so we came on our Mules to his Door, that is to say, on his Mules, for he would have my Patron the Spaniard, to whom, I observed, he shew'd an extraordinary Respect, and Captain Merlotte, and myself, mounted his fresh Mules to carry us to his House.

When we came thither, I observ'd he wanted the assistance of my Patron's Servants for his Cookery; for tho' he had provided Abundance of Food, he own'd, he knew not how to prepare it to our liking; so they assisted him, and one of my Midshipmen pretending to cook too, made them roast a Piece of Venison, and a Piece of a Kid, or young Goat, admirable well, and putting no Garlick or Onions into there Sauce, but there own Juices, with a little Wine, it pleas'd the Spaniard so well, that my Man pass'd for an extraordinary Cook, and had the Favour ask'd of him, to dress some more after the same Manner, when we came back to the Spaniard's House.

We had here several Sorts of wild Fowl, which the Chilian had shot while we were gone; but I knew none of them by any of

the Kinds we have in England, except some Teal. However, they were very good.

The Day was very agreeable and pleasant here; but the Night dreadful, as before, being all Fire and Flame again, and tho' we understood both what it was, and where, yet I could not make it familiar to me, for my Life. The Chilian perswaded us to stay all the next Day, and did his Endeavour to divert us as much as possible: My two Midshipmen went out with him a Hunting, as he call'd it, that is, a Shooting; but, tho' he was a Man of fifty Years of Age, he would have kill'd Ten of them at his Sport, running up the Hills, and leaping from Rock to Rock like a Boy of Seventeen. At his Gun he was so sure a Marksman, that he seldom miss'd any thing he shot at, whether running, flying or sitting.

They brought home with them several Fowls, two Faws, and full grown Deer, and we had nothing but boiling, stewing, and broiling all that Evening: In the Afternoon, we walk'd out to see the stupendous Precipices which surrounded us. As for looking for Gold, we saw the Places where there was enough to be had; but that was become now so familiar to us, that we troubled not ourselves about it, as a Thing not much worth while; but our two Midshipmen, I think, got about the Quantity of five or six Ounces a-piece while we were chattering, or replying in the Chilian's House.

Here it was, that I enter'd into a Confidence with my Patron the Spaniard, concerning my grand Design. I told him, in the first Place, that my
View

View of the open Country beyond these Hills, and the particular Account he had given me of it also, had rais'd a Curiosity in me, that I could scarce withstand; and that I had thereupon form'd a Design which, if he could further me with his Assistance, I had a very great Mind to put in Practice, and that, tho' I was to perish in the Attempt.

He told me very readily, nothing should be wanting on his Part to give any Assistance he could, either by himself or any of his Servants; but, smiling, and with Abundance of good Humour, Seignior, says he, I believe I guess at the Design you speak of; you are fir'd now with a Desire to traverse this great Country to the Coasta Deserta, and the North Seas: That is a very great Undertaking, and you will be well advis'd before you undertake it.

Truly, Seignior, said I, you have guessed my Design, and were it not, that I have two Ships under my Care, and some Cargo of Value on Board, I would bring my whole Ship's Company on Shore, and make the Adventure, and, perhaps, we might be strong enough to defend ourselves against whatever might happen by the Way.

As to that, Seignior, says he, you would be in no Danger that would require so many Men; for you will find but few Inhabitants any where, and those not in Numbers sufficient to give you any Trouble; fifty Men would be as many as you would either want or desire, and, perhaps, as you would find Provision for; and,

for fifty Men, we might be able to carry Provisions with us to keep them from Distress; but if you will accept of my Advice, as well as Assistance, Seignior, said he, choose a faithful strong Fellow out of your Ship, on whom you can depend, and give him fifty Men with him, or thereabouts, and such Instructions as you may find needful, as to the Place on the Coast where you would have them fix their Stay, and let them take the first Hazards of the Adventure; and as you are going round by Sea, you will, if Success follows, meet them on the Shore; and if the Account they give of their Journey encourage you, you may come afterwards yourself up to these very Mountains, and take a farther View: In which Case, he added, with a solemn Protestation, Cost what it will, I will come and meet you 100 Miles beyond the Hills, with Supplies of Provisions, and Mules for your Assistance.

This was such wholesome and faithful Advice, and he offer'd it so sincerely, that tho' it was very little differing from my own Design, yet I would not be seen so to lessen his Prudence in the Measure of his Friendship, in advising it, as to say, that I had resolv'd to do so. But, making all possible Acknowledgment to him for his kind Offers, I told him, I would take his Advice, and that I would act just according to the Measures he had prescrib'd; and at the same time, I assur'd him that if I found a convenient Port to settle and fortify in, I would not fail to come again from France (for we pass'd always as acting for France, whatever Nation we were of) to relieve and supply them; and

and that if ever I return'd safe, I would not fail to correspond with him, by the Passages of the Mountains, and make a better Acknowledgment for his Kindness, than I had been able to do yet.

He was going to break off the Discourse, upon the Occasion of the Chilian's returning, who was just come in from his Hunting, telling me, we would talk farther of it by the Way; but I told him, I could not quite dismiss the Subject, because I must bespeak him to make some mention of it to the Chilian, that he might on his Account, be an Assistant to our Men, as we saw he was capable of being, in their passing by those difficult Ways, and for their Supply of Provisions, &c. Trouble not your-self with that, Seignior, said he, for when your Men come, the Care shall be mine: I'll come myself as far as his wealthy Chilian's, and procure them all the Assistance this Place can afford them, and do any thing that offers, to forward them in the Undertaking.

This was so Generous, and so Extraordinary, that I had nothing to say more, but to please myself with the apparent Success of my Attempt, and acknowledge the Happiness of having an Opportunity to oblige so generous a spirited and grateful a Person.

I would, however, have made some farther Acknowledgement to our Chilian Benefactor; but I had nothing left, except a Couple of Hats, and three Pair of English Stockings, one Pair Silk and the other two Worsted,

and those I gave him, and made him a great many Acknowledgments for for the Favours he had shewn us, and the next Morning came away.

We made little Stay any where else in our Return; but making much such Stages back as we did forward, we came the 14th Day to our Patron's House, having made the Passage thro' in something less than 16 Days, and the like back in 15 Days, including our stay at the Chilian's one Day. At Length we all arriv'd safe to our Ships, being very much Fatigued with our long and tedious Journey, tho' it was to our Satisfaction.

The 14th of January (the Weather being hot, and Days long, for this was their July) we weigh'd and stood Northerly along the Shore, the Coast running from Port St. Julian N. N. E. 'till we arriv'd at the famous Islands call'd Penguin Islands; and here we came to an Anchor, in the same round Bay which Sir John Narborough called Port Desire, it being the 17th of January.

Here we found a Post, or Cross, erected by Sir John Narborough, with a Plate of Copper nail'd to it, and an Inscription, signifying, that he had taken Possession of that Country in the Name of King Charles II. Our Men rais'd a Shout for Joy that they were in their own King's Dominions or, as they said, in their own Country; and indeed, excepting that it was not inhabited by Englishmen, and cultivated planted, and inclos'd, after the English Manner, I never saw a Country in the World so like England.

Here we victualled our Ships with a new

new Kind of Food; for we loaded ourselves with Seals, of which here are an infinite Number, and which we salted and eat, and our Men lik'd them wonderfully for a while; but they soon began to be weary of them: Also the Penguins are a very wholesome Diet, and very pleasant, especially when a little salted; and as for Salt, we could have loaded our Ship with it, being very good and white, made by the Sun, and found in standing Ponds of Saltwater, near the Shore.

The Penguins are so easily kill'd, and are found in such vast Multitudes on that Island, (which, for that Reason, is so call'd) that our Men loaded the Long-boat with them twice in one Day, and we reckon'd there were no less than 7000 in the Boat each Time.

Here we travell'd up into the Country in Search of our Men, and made our Signals, but had no answer to them, nor heard any Intelligence of them. We saw some People here at a Distance, scattering about; but they were but few, nor would they be brought by any Means to converse with us, or come near us.

We spread ourselves over the Country far and wide; and here we shot Hares and Wild-Fowl again in Abundance, the Country being much the same as before, but something more bushy, and here and there a few Trees, but they were a great Way off. There is a large River which empties itself into this Bay.

Finding no News here of our Men, I order'd the Madagascar Ship to weigh and stand farther North, keeping as near the Shore as he might with Safety, and causing his Men to look out for the Signals, which,

if they discover'd, they should give us Notice by firing three Guns.

They sailed the Height of Cape Blanco where the Land falling back, makes a deep Bay, and the Sea receives into it a great River at several Mouths, some of them 20 Leagues from the other, all farther North. Here they stood into the Bay, till they made the Land again; for at the first Opening of the Bay, they could not see the Bottom of it, the Land lying very low.

The Captain was doubtful what he should do upon the Appearance of so large a Bay, and was loth to stand farther in, lest the Land, pushing out into the Sea again afterwards, and a Gale springing up from Seaward, they might be shut in to a Bay where they had no Knowledge of the Ground; and upon this Caution, they resolv'd among themselves to come to an Anchor for that Evening, and to put farther out to Sea the next Morning.

Accordingly, the next Morning, he weigh'd, and stood off to Sea; but the Weather being very fine, and the little Wind that blew, being S. W. by S. he ventured to stand in for shore, where he found two or three small Creeks, and one large River, and sending in his Shallop to sound, they found out a good Place to ride in, upon their making the Signal to him, that they had found such a Place, he stood in, and came to an Anchor in a 11 Fathom good Ground, half a League from the Shore, and well defended from the Northerly and Easterly Winds, which were the Winds we had Reason to fear.

Having thus brought his Ship to an Anchor,

Anchor, he sent his Shallop along the Shore to give me Account of it, and desire me to come up to him, which accordingly we did; - and here we resolv'd to ride for some time, in hopes to hear from our little Army. We went on Shore, some or other of us every Day, and especially when five of our Men, going on Shore on the North Side of the River, had shot three Peruvian Sheep, and a black wild Bull; for after that, they ranged the Country far and near to find more, but could never come within Shot of them, except three Bulls and a Cow, which they kill'd after a long Chase.

We lay here 'till the 17th of February, without any News of our Travellers, as I call'd them. All the Hopes I had, was, that five of our Men, asking my Leave to travel, swore to me, they would go quite up to the Andes, but they would find them; and obliged me to stay 20 Days for them and no longer. This I promised them, and giving them every thing they asked, and two of the Peruvian Sheep to carry their Ammunition, with two Dozen of Rockets for Signals, a Speaking-Trumpet, and a good Prospective-Glals, away they went; and from them we had yet heard no News, so that was our present Hope.

They travell'd as they afterwards gave an Account, 120 Miles up the Country, 'till they were at last forced to resolve to kill one of their Guinacoes, or Sheep, to satisfy their Hunger, which was a great Grief to them; for their Luggage was heavy to carry; but, I say, they only resolv'd on it, for just as they were going to do it, one of

them rouzed a Deer with a Fawn, and by great good luck, shot them both; for having kill'd the Doe, the Fawn stood still by her, 'till he had loaded his Piece again, and shot that also.

This supplied them for four or five Days plentifully, and the last Day one of my Men, being by the Bank of the River, for they kept as near the River as they could, in hopes to hear of them that Way, saw something black come driving down the Stream; he could not reach it, but calling one of his Fellowes, their Curiosity was such, that the other, being a good Swimmer, stripp'd and put off to it, and when he came to it, he found it was a Man's Hat; this made them conclude their Fellowes were not far off, and that they were coming by Water.

Upon this, they made to the first rising Ground they could come at and there they encamp'd, and, at Night fir'd some Rockets, (they kept looking out, you may be sure) and after the third Rocket was fir'd, they, to their great Joy, saw two Rockets rise up from the Westward, and soon after that, a Third; and in two Days more, they all joytully met, as you shall hear.

We had been here, as I have said, impatiently expecting them a great while; but at last, the Man at the Main-Top, who was ordered to look out, call'd aloud to us below, that he saw a Flash of Fire, and immediately, the Men looking to Landward, they saw two Rokets rise up in the Air at a great Distance, which we answer'd by firing three Rockets again, and they return'd by one

one Rocket, to signify, that they saw our Mens Signal.

This was a joyful Exchange of distance Language to both Sides, but I was not there; for being impatient, I had put out, and sail'd about ten Leagues farther; but, our Ship fir'd three Guns to give us notice, which, however, we heard not, and yet we knew they fir'd too; for, it being in the Night, our Men, who were very attentive with their Eyes, as well as Ears, saw plainly the three Flashes of the Guns, tho' they could not hear the Report, the Wind being contrary. This was such certain Intelligence to me and was so impatient to know how Things went, that, having also a small Gale of Wind, I weigh'd immediately, and stood back again to our other Ship; it was not, however, not 'till the second Day after we weigh'd, that we came up to them, having little or no Wind all the first Day; the next Day, in the Morning, they spied us, and fir'd the three Guns again, being the Signal, that they had got News of our Friends.

Nothing could be more to my Satisfaction, then to hear, that they had got News, and it was as much to their Satisfaction as to ours, to sure, I mean our little Army; for if any Disaster had happen'd to us, they had been in a very odd Condition; and tho' they might have found Means to subsist, yet they would have been out of all Hope of ever returning to their own Country.

Upon the Signal, I stood into the Bay, and came to an Anchor at about a League to the Northward of our o-

ther Ship, and as far from the Shore; and, as it were, in the Mouth of the River, waiting for another Signal from our Men, by which we might judge, which Side of the River to go a Shore at, and take some proper Measures to come at them.

About Five o' Clock in the Evening, our Eyes, being all up in the Air, and towards the Hills, for the appointed Signals, beheld, to our great surprise, a *Canoe* come rowing to us out of the Mouth of the River; immediately we went to work with our Prospective Glasses. One said it was one Thing, and one said it was another, 'till I fetch'd out a large Telescope out of the Cabbin, and with that I could easily see they were my own Men, and it was to our inexpressible Satisfaction, that they soon after came directly on Board.

It might very well take up another Volume, as large as this, to give a farther Account of the particulars of their Journey, or rather their Journey and Voyage: How they got through the Hills, and was entertain'd by the generous *Spaniard*; and afterwards by the wealthy *Chilian*: How the Men, greedy for Gold, were hardly brought away from the Mountains: And, how, once they had much ado to persuade them not to rob the honest *Chilian* who had used them so well, 'till my Lieutenant, then their Captain, by a Stratagem seized on all their Weapons, and threatned to speak to the *Spaniard* to raise all the *Chilians* in the Mountains, and have all their Throats cut; and yet, that even this did not suffice, 'till the two Midshipmen, then their Lieutenants,

Lieutenants, assur'd them, that at the first Opening of the Hills, and the Rivers beyond, they would have plenty of Gold; and one of the Midshipmen told them, that if he did not see them have so much Gold, that they would not stoop to take up any more, they should have all his Share to be divided among them, and should leave him behind in the first desolate Place they could find.

How this appeased them 'till they came to the outer Edge of the Mountains, where I had been, and where my Patron the Spaniard left them, having supply'd them with 16 Mules to carry their Baggage and some Guinacoes, or Sheep of Peru, which would carry Burthens, and afterwards be good to eat also.

Also, how here they mutiny'd again, and would not be drawn away, being insatiable in their Thirst after the Gold, 'till about 20, more reasonable than the rest, were content to move forward; and, after some Time the rest follow'd tho' not till they were assur'd, that the picking up of Gold continued all along the River, which began at the Bottom of the Mountains, and that it was likely to continue a great Way farther.

How they work'd their Way down these Streams, with still an insatiable Avarice and Thirst after the Gold, to the Lake call'd The Golden-Lake, and how here they were astonish'd at the Quantities they found: How, after this, they had great Difficulty to furnish themselves with Provisions, and greater still in carrying it along with them till they found more.

I say, all these Accounts might suffice

to make a Volume as large as all the rest: How, at the farther End of this Lake, they found that it evacuated it self into a strong Current, to the S. S. E. and afterwards to the S. by E. encourag'd them to build Canoes, in which they embark'd, and which River brought them down to the very Bay where we found them; but that they met with many Difficulties, sunk, and sav'd their Canoes several Times, by which they lost some of their Baggage, and in one Disaster lost a great Parcel of their Gold to their surprize and Mortification: How at one Place they split two of their Canoes, where they could find no Timber to build new ones, and the many Hardships they were put to before they got other Canoes: But I shall give a brief Account fit all, and bring it into as narrow a Compass as I can.

They set out, as I have said with Mules and Horses to carry their Baggage, and the Spaniard gave them a Servant with them for a Guide, who carrying them By-Ways and unfrequented, so that they might give no Alarm at the Town of Villa Rica or any where else, they came to the Mouth of the Entrance into the Mountains, and there they pitch'd their Tent.

N. B. The Lieutenant who kept their Journal, giving an Account of this merrily in his Sea Language, expresses it thus: Being all come safe into the Opening that is in the Entrance of the Mountains and being there free from the Observation of the Country, we called it our first Port, so we brought too, and came to an Anchor.

Here the generous Spaniard, who at his own Request was gone before sent his Gentleman

Gentleman and one of his Sons to them and sent them Plenty of Provisions as also caused their Mules to be changed for others that were fresh and had not been fatigued with any of the other Part of the Country.

These Things being done, the Spaniard's Gentleman caus'd them to decamp, and march two Days farther into the Mountains, and then they encamped again, where the Spaniard himself came Incognito to them, and, with the utmost Kindness and Generosity, was their Guide himself, and their Purveyor also, but two or three Times, the Fellows were so rude, so ungovernable, and unbounded in their hunting after Gold, that the Spaniard was almost frighted at them, and told the Captain of it: Nor, indeed, was it altogether without Cause; for the Dogs were so ungrateful, that they robbed two of the Houses of the Chilians, and took what Gold they had, which was not much indeed, but it hazzarded so much the Alarming the Country, and raising all the Mountaneers upon them, that the Spaniard was upon the Point of flying from them, in Spight of all their Fire Arms and Courage.

But the Captain begged him to stay one Night more, and promis'd to have the Fellows punish'd, and Satisfaction to be made; and so he brought all his Men together and talk'd to them, and enquir'd who it was: But never was such a Piece of Work in the World: When the new Captain came to talk of who did it, and of Punishment, they cry'd, they all did it, and they did not value all the Spaniards or Indians in the Country; they would have all the Gold in the whole Mountains, ay, that they would, by ——— and swore to it, and if the Spaniard offer'd to speak a Word to them, they would whip his Head off and the like.

However, a little Reasoning with them, brought some of the Men to their Senses, and the Captain, who was a Man of Sense and a smooth Tongue, manag'd so well, that he brought about 22 of the Men, and two Lieutenants and Surgeons to declare for his Opinion, and that they would act better for the future; and with these, he clapt in between the other Fellows, and separated about 18 of them from their Arms, for they had run scattering among the Rocks to hunt for Gold, and when they were called to this Parley, had not their Weapons with them; By this Stratagem he seiz'd 11 of the Thieves, and made them Prisoners; and then he told the rest in so many Words, that if they would not comply to keep Order, and obey the Rules they were at first sworn to, and had promised, he would force them to it, for he would deliver them, bound Hand and Foot, to the Spaniards, and they should do the poor Chilians Justice upon them; for that in short, he would not have the rest murder'd for them; upon this, he order'd his Men to draw up, to shew them he would be as good as his Word, but they consider'd of it, and submitted.

But the Spaniard had taken a wiser Course than this, or, perhaps, they had been all murder'd; for, he ran to the two Chilian Houses where the Rogues had plunder'd, and where, in short, there was a Kind of little Hubbub about it, and with good Words, promising to give them as much Gold as they lost, and the Price of some other Things that were taken away, he appeas'd the People; and
10

so our Men were not ruin'd, as they would certainly have been, if the Mountaniers had taken the Alarm.

After this, they grew a little more governable, but, in short, the Sight of the Gold, and the easy getting it for they pick'd it, up in Abundance of Places; I say the Sight of the Gold, made them stark mad; for now, they were not as they were before, trafficking for the Owners and for the Voyage: But as I had promis'd the Gold they got should be their own, and that they were now working for themselves, there was no getting them to go on, but, in short, they would dwell here, and this was as fatal a Humour as the other.

But to bring this Part of the Voyage to an End, after Eight Days they came to the hospitable wealthy Chilian's House, who I mention'd before; and here, as the Spaniard had contriv'd it, they found all Kind of needful Stores for Provisions laid up, as it were, on Purpose; and, in a Word, here they were not fed only, but feasted.

Here again, the Captain discover'd a cursed Conspiracy, which, had it taken Effect, would, besides the Baseness of the Fact, have ended in their total Destruction; in short, they had resolv'd to rob this Chilian who was so kind to them; but, as I said, one of the Lieutenants discover'd and detected this villainous Contrivance, and squash'd it, so as never to let the Spaniard know of it.

But, I say, to end this Part; they were 21 Days in this Traverse, for

they could not go on so easy and so fast, now they were a little Army, as we did, who were but six or seven. At length they came to the View of the open Country, and being all encamped, at the Edge of a Descent the generous Spaniard, and his three Servants, took his Leave, wishing them a good Journey, and so went back, having the Day before, brought them some Deer, five or six Cows and some Sheep. for their Subsisting at their Entrance into, and Travel thro' the plain Country.

And now they began to descend towards the Plain, but they met with more Difficulty here than they expected; for, as I observ'd, that the Way, for some Miles, went with an Ascent, towards the farthest Parts of the Hill, that continu'd Ascent, had by Degrees, brought them to a very great, and, in some Places, an unpassable Descent; so that, however my Guide found his Way down, when I was through, it was not so easy for them to do it, who were so many in Number, and incumbred with Mules and Horses, and with their Baggage, so that they knew not what to do; and if they had not known that our Ships were gone away, there had been some Odds, but, like the old Israelites, they would have murmured against their Leader, and have all gone back to Egypt. In a Word, they were at their Wits End, and knew not what Course to take for two or three Days, trying and essaying to get down here and and there, and then frighted with Precipices and Rocks, and climbing up to get back again; the whole of the Matter was, that they had mis'd a narrow Way, where they should have

have turn'd off the S. E. the Marks which our Men had made before, having not been in regular and exact just there, as in other Parts of the Way, or some other turning being so very like the same that they took one for the other; and thus going strait forward too far, before they turn'd, they came to an Opening indeed, and saw the plain Country under them, as they had done before; but the Descent was not so practicable.

After they had puzzled themselves here, as I said, two or three Days, one of the Lieutenants and a Man with him, seeing a Hut or House of a *Chilian* at some Distance, rode away towards it; but passing into a Valley that lay between, he met with a River which he by no means could get over with the Mules; so he came back again in Dispair: The Captain then resolv'd to send back to the honest rich *Chilian*, who had entertain'd them so well, for a Guide, or to desire him to give them such Directions, as they might not mistake.

But as the Person sent back was one of those who had taken the Journal which I mention'd, and was therefore greatly vex'd at missing his Way in such a Manner; so he had his Eyes in every Corner and pulling out his Pocket-Book at every turning, how the Marks of Places agreed; and at last, the very next Morning after he had set out he spi'd the Turning where they should all have gone in, to have come to the Place which they were at before: This being so remarkable a Discovery, he came back again directly, without going to the *Chilian's* House, which was two Days Journey farther.

Our Men were reviv'd with this Discovery, and all agreed to march back; so, having lost about 6 days in this false step, they got into the right Way, and in four more came to the Descent, where I had been before.

Here the Hill was still very high, and the Passage down, was steep and difficult enough; but still, it was Practicable, and our Men coul'd see the marks of Cattle having

having pass'd there, as if they had gone in Drifts or Drovers also it was apparent, that by some help and Labour of Hands, the way might be led winding and turning on the Slope of the Hill, so as to make it much easier to get down than it was now.

It cost them no small Labour, however to get down chiefly because of the Mules, which very often fell down with their Loads, and our Men said they believ'd they could, with much more Ease, have mounted up from the East Side to the Top, than they came from the West Side to the Bottom.

They encamp'd one Night on the Declivity of the Hill, but got up early, and was at the Bottom and on the plain Ground by Noon: As soon as they came there, they encamped and refresh'd themselves, that is to say, went to Dinner; but it being very hot there, the cool Breezes of the Mountains having now left them, they were more inclin'd to sleep than to eat; so the Captain order'd the Tent to be set up, and they made the whole Day of it, calling a Council in the Morning to consider what Course they should steer, and how they should go on.

Here they came to this Resolution, that they should send a Man or two, a considerable Way up the Hill again; to take the strictest Observation he could of the Plain, with the largest Glasses they had, and mark

which Way the nearest River or Water was to be seen; and they should direct their Course first to the Water, and that if the Course of it lay South, or any Way to the East of the South, they would follow on the Bank of it, and as soon as it was large enough to carry them, they would make them some Canoes or Shallops, or what they could do, with the most Ease, to carry them on by Water; also they directed him to observe if he could see any Cattle feeding at a Distance, or the like.

The Messenger return'd and brought them Word, that all the Way on the E. and so on the S. E. they could discover nothing of Water, but that they had seen a great Lake or Lough of Water at a great Distance, which looked like a Sea, and lay from them to the Northward of the East, about two Points; adding, that they had not known, but it might afterwards empty itself to the Eastward, and it was their Opinion to make the best of their Way thither.

Accordingly the next Morning they decamped and marched E. N. E. very cheartfully, but found the Way much longer than they expected; for tho' from the Mountains, the Country seem'd to lie flat and plain, yet when they came to measure it by their Feet, they found a great many little Hills; little, I say, compar'd to the great Mountains, but great to them who were to travel over them in the Heat, and with but indifferent Support as to Provisions; so that in a Word, the Captain very

prudently

prudently order'd, that they should travel one three Hours in the Morning, and three Hours in the Evening, and incamp in the Heat of the Day, to refresh themselves as well as they could.

The best Thing they met with in that Part of the Country, was, that they had Plenty of Water; for though they were not yet come to any large considerable River, yet, every low Piece of Ground, had a small Rill of Water in it: and the Springs coming out from the rising Grounds, on the Sides of the Mountains, being innumerable, made many such small Brooks.

It cost them six Days Travel, with two Days resting between to advance to that River of Water, which, from the Height of the Mountains, seemed to be but a little Way off: They could not march, by their Computation above 10 or 12 Miles a Day, and rest every third Day too, for their Luggage was heavy, and their Mules but few; also some of their Mules tir'd and jaded, by their long March, or fell lame, and were good for nothing.

Besides all this, the Days which I call Days of Rest, were really not so to them, for those Intervals were employ'd to range about and hunt for Food; and it was for that, more than for Want of Rest, that they halted every third Day.

In this Exercise they did, however, meet with such Success, that they made shift to kill one Sort of Creature or another every Day, sufficient to keep them from famishing; sometimes they met with some Deer, other times with the Guinacoes or Peruvian Sheep, and sometimes with Fowls of several Kinds, so that they did pretty well for Food: At length, viz. the seventh Day, they came to a River, which was at first small, but having receiv'd another small River or two from the Northern Part of the Country, began to seem large enough for that Purpose, and as it run E. S. E. they concluded it would run into the Lake, and that they might Fleet down this River, if they could make any thing to carry them.

But their first Discouragement was, the Country was open, with very little Wood, and no Trees, or very few to be found large enough to make Canoes, or Boats of any Sort; but the Skill of their Carpenters, of which they had four, soon conquer'd this Difficulty; for coming to a low swampy Ground, on the Side of the River, they found a Tree something like a Beech, very firm good Sort of Wood; and yet soft enough to work easy; and they went to Work with this, and at first, made them some Rafts, which they thought might

might carry them along, 'till the River was bigger.

While this was doing (which took up two or three Days) the Men straggled up and down; some with their Guns to shoot Fowls, some with Contrivances to catch Fish, some one thing, some another; when on a sudden, one of their Fishermen, not in the River, but in a little Brook, which afterwards run into the River, found a little Bit of shining Stuff among the Sand, or Earth, in the Bank; and one cry'd, he had found a Piece of Gold: Now it seems all was not Gold that glister'd, for the Lump had no Gold in it, whatever it was; but the Word being given out at first, it immediately set all our Men a Romaging the Shores of every little Rill of Water they came at, to see if there was no Gold; and they had not look'd long, but they found several little Grains of Gold very small and fine, not only in this Brook, but in several others. So they spent their Time the more chearfully, because they made some Purchase.

All this while they saw no People, nor any Signals of any, except once on the other Side of the River, at a great Distance, they thought

they saw about 30 together, but whether Men or Women, or how many of each, they could not tell, nor would they come any nearer; only stood and gaz'd at our People at a Distance.

They were now ready to quit their Camp and embark, intending to lay all their Baggage on the Ratts, with three or four sick Men, and so the rest to march by the River-Side, and as many as could to ride upon the Mules; when, on a sudden, all their Navigation was put to a Stop, and their new Vessels, such as they were, suffer'd a Wreck: The Cause was thus, they had observ'd a great many black Clouds to hang over the Tops of the Mountains, and some of them even below the Tops, and they did believe it rain'd among the Hills; but in the Plain where they lay; and all about them, it was fair, and the Weather fine.

But in the Night, the Carpenters and their Assistants, who had set up a little Tent near the River-Side, were alarm'd with a great roaring Noise (as they thought) in the River, tho' at a Distance upwards; presently after, they found the Water began to come into their Tents; when, running out, they found the River was swelling over its Banks, and all the low Grounds on both Sides of them.

To their great Satisfaction it was just break of Day, so that they could see enough to make their Way from the Water; and the Land very happily rising a little to the South of the River

River they immediately fled thither; two of them had so much Presence of Mind with them, as to pick up their working Tools, at least some of them, and carry off, and the Water raising gradually, the other two Carpenters ventur'd back to save the rest; but they were put to it to go back again with them; in a Word, the Water rose to such a Height, that it carried away their Tent, and every Thing that was in it, and, which was worse, their Rafts, (for they had almost finish'd four large Rafts) were all lifted off from the Place where they were fram'd, which was a kind of dry Dock, and dash'd all to Pieces, and the Timber, such as it was, all carry'd away: The smaller Brooks all swell'd in Proportion to the larger River; so that in a Word, our Men lay as it were, surrounded with Water, and began to be in a terrible Consternation; for though they lay in a hard dry Piece of Ground, too high for the Land-Flood to reach them, yet had the Rains continued in the Mountains they might have lain there 'till they had been oblig'd to eat one another, and so there had been an End of our new Discovery.

But the Weather clear'd up among the Hills the next Day, which harden'd them up again; and as the Flood rose so soon, so the Current being furiously rapid, the Waters run off again as easily as they came on, and in two Days the Water was all gone again. But our little Float was shipwreck'd, as I have said, and the Carpenters finding how dangerous such great unwildy Rafts would be, resolv'd to set to it, and build one large Float with Sides to it like a

Punt or Ferry-boat. They work'd so hard at this, ten of the Men always working with them to help, that in five Days they had her finish'd: The only Thing they wanted was Pitch and Tar, to make her Upper-work keep out the Water; and they made a shift to fetch a Juice out of some of the Wood they had cut, by Help of Fire, that answer'd the End tolerably well.

But that which made this Disappointment less afflicting, was, that our Men hunting about the small Streams where this Water had come down so furiously, found that there was more Gold, and the more for the late Flood. This made them run straggling up the Streams; and, as the Captain said, he thought once they would run quite back to the Mountains again.

But that was his Ignorance too, for after a while, and the nearer they came to the Rising of the Hills, the Quantity abated; for there the Streams were so furious, the Water wash'd it all away, and carried it down with it so that by the End of five Days the Men found but little, and began to come back again.

But then they discover'd, that tho' there was less in the higher Part of the Rivers, there was more farther down, and they found it so well worth while, that they went fishing along for Gold all the Way towards the Lake, and left their Fellows and the Boat to come after.

At last, when nothing else would do it, Hunger call'd them

might carry them along, 'till the River was bigger.

While this was doing (which took up two or three Days) the Men straggled up and down; some with their Guns to shoot Fowls, some with Contrivances to catch Fish, some one thing, some another; when on a sudden, one of their Fishermen, not in the River, but in a little Brook, which afterwards run into the River, found a little Bit of shining Stuff among the Sand, or Earth, in the Bank; and one cry'd, he had found a Piece of Gold: Now it seems all was not Gold that glister'd, for the Lump had no Gold in it, whatever it was; but the Word being given out at first, it immediately set all our Men a Romaging the Shores of every little Rill of Water they came at, to see if there was no Gold; and they had not look'd long, but they found several little Grains of Gold very small and fine, not only in this Brook, but in several others. So they spent their Time the more chearfully, because they made some Purchase.

All this while they saw no People, nor any Signals of any, except once on the other Side of the River, at a great Distance, they thought

they saw about 30 together, but whether Men or Women, or how many of each, they could not tell, nor would they come any nearer; only stood and gaz'd at our People at a Distance.

They were now ready to quit their Camp and embark, intending to lay all their Baggage on the Rafts, with three or four sick Men, and so the rest to march by the River-Side, and as many as could to ride upon the Mules; when, on a sudden, all their Navigation was put to a Stop, and their new Vessels, such as they were, suffer'd a Wreck: The Cause was thus, they had observ'd a great many black Clouds to hang over the Tops of the Mountains, and some of them even below the Tops, and they did believe it rain'd among the Hills; but in the Plain where they lay, and all about them, it was fair, and the Weather fine.

But in the Night, the Carpenters and their Assistants, who had set up a little Tent near the River-Side, were alarm'd with a great roaring Noise (as they thought) in the River, tho' at a Distance upwards; presently after, they found the Water began to come into their Tents; when, running out, they found the River was swelling over its Banks, and all the low Grounds on both Sides of them.

To their great Satisfaction it was just break of Day, so that they could see enough to make their Way from the Water; and the Land very happily rising a little to the South of the River

River they immediately fled thither; two of them had so much Presence of Mind with them, as to pick up their working Tools, at least some of them, and carry off, and the Water raising gradually, the other two Carpenters ventur'd back to save the rest; but they were put to it to go back again with them; in a Word, the Water rose to such a Height, that it carried away their Tent, and every Thing that was in it, and, which was worse, their Rafts, (for they had almost finish'd four large Rafts) were all lifted off from the Place where they were fram'd, which was a kind of dry Dock, and dash'd all to Pieces, and the Timber, such as it was, all carry'd away: The smaller Brooks all swell'd in Proportion to the larger River; so that in a Word, our Men lay as it were, surrounded with Water, and began to be in a terrible Consternation; for though they lay in a hard dry Piece of Ground, too high for the Land-Flood to reach them, yet had the Rains continued in the Mountains they might have lain there 'till they had been oblig'd to eat one another, and so there had been an End of our new Discovery.

But the Weather clear'd up among the Hills the next Day, which harden'd them up again; and as the Flood rose so soon, so the Current being furiously rapid, the Waters run off again as easily as they came on, and in two Days the Water was all gone again. But our little Float was shipwreck'd, as I have said, and the Carpenters finding how dangerous such great unwildy Rafts would be, resolv'd to set to it, and build one large Float with Sides to it like a

Punt or Ferry-boat. They work'd so hard at this, ten of the Men always working with them to help, that in five Days they had her finish'd: The only Thing they wanted was Pitch and Tar, to make her Upper-work keep out the Water; and they made a shift to fetch a Juice out of some of the Wood they had cut, by Help of Fire, that answer'd the End tolerably well.

But that which made this Disappointment less afflicting, was, that our Men hunting about the small Streams where this Water had come down so furiously, found that there was more Gold, and the more for the late Flood. This made them run straggling up the Streams; and, as the Captain said, he thought once they would run quite back to the Mountains again.

But that was his Ignorance too, for after a while, and the nearer they came to the Rising of the Hills, the Quantity abated; for there the Streams were so furious, the Water wash'd it all away, and carried it down with it so that by the End of five Days the Men found but little, and began to come back again.

But then they discover'd, that tho' there was less in the higher Part of the Rivers, there was more farther down, and they found it so well worth while, that they went fishing along for Gold all the Way towards the Lake, and left their Fellows and the Boat to come after.

At last, when nothing else would do it, Hunger call'd them

them off, and so, once, more they got all their Company together again; and how they began to load the Fleet, indeed it might be call'd a Luggage Boat; However, it answer'd very well, and was a great relief to our Men; but when they came to load it, they found it would not carry so much by a grate deal as they had to put in it; besides, that they would be oblig'd to march on Foot by the Shore, which had this particular Inconvenience in it, that when ever they came to any small River or Brook, which ran into the other, as was very often the Case, they would be forc'd to march up a great Way to get over it, or unload the grate Float to make a Ferry-boat of it to wass them over.

Upon this, they resolv'd, that the first Place they came at, where stuff was to be had for building, they would go to work again, and make two or three more Floats not so big as the other, that so they might embark themselves, and their Stuff, and their Provisions too all together, and take the full Benefit of the River, where it wold afford them Help, and not some sail

on the Water, and some go on Foot up n the Land, which was very fatiguing.

Upon this, as soon as they found Stuff, as I have said, and a convenient Place, they went all Hands to work to build more Floats or Boats, call them as you will: While this was doing, all the spare Men, and all the Men at spare Hours, spent their Time and Pain in hunting about for Gold in the Brooks and small Streams, as well those they had been at before, as others; and that after they had, as it were, plunder'd them at the first Discovery, for as they had found some Gold after the hasty Rain, they were loth to give it over, tho' they had been assur'd there was more to be found in the Lake where they were yet to come, than in the Brooks.

All this while the making the Floats went slowly on, for the Men thought it a great Hardship to keep chopping of Blocks, as they call'd it, while their Fellows were picking up of Gold, tho' they knew they where to have their

their Share of what they found, as much as if they had been all the while with them: But it seems, there is a Kind of Satisfaction in the Work of Picking up Gold, besides the meer Gain.

However, at Length, the Gold falling, they began to think of their more immediate Work, which was going forward; and the Carpenters having made three more Floats like flatbottom'd Barges, which they brought to be able to carry their Baggage and themselves too, if they thought fit, they began to embark and fall down the River, but they grew Sick of their Navigation in a very few Days; for before they got to the Lake, which was but three Days going, they run several Times on ground, and were oblig'd to lighten them to go off again, then load again, and lighten again, and so off and on, 'till they were so tir'd of them; that they would much rather have carried all their Baggage, and have travell'd by Land: And at last they were forc'd to cast off two of them, and

put all their Bagge on Board the other Two; which, at best, tho' large, were but very poor crazy Things.

At length, they came in Sight of their beloved Lake, and the next Day they enter'd into the open Part or Sea of it, which they found was very large, and in some Places very deep.

Their Floats, or what they might be call'd, were by no Means fit to carry them upon the inland Sea; for as, if the Water had been stirr'd by the least Gust of Wind, it would presently have wash'd over them, and have spoiled, if not sunk, their Baggage; so they had no Way to steer, or guide them, whenever they came into the deep Water where they could not reach the Ground with their Poles.

This oblig'd them, as soon as they came into the open Lake, to keep close under one Shore, that is to say, to the Right-hand, where the Land falling away to the S. and the S. and by E. seem'd to carry them still forward on their Way; the other Side widening to the N. made the Lake seem there to be really a Sea, for they could not see over it unless they went on Shore, and got up upon some rising Ground.

Here, at first, they found the Shore steep too, and a great Depth of the Water close to the Land, which made them very uneasy; for if the least Gale of Wind had disturb'd the Water, or especially

cially blowing from off the Lake, they would have been shipwreck'd close to the Shore. However, after they had gone for two Days along the Side, by the Help of Towing and Setting as well as they could, they came to a flatter Shore and a fair Strand, to their great Joy and Satisfaction.

But if the Shore prov'd to their Satisfaction for its Safety, it was much more so on another Account; for they had not been long here, before they found the Sands or Shore infinitely rich in Gold, beyond all they had seen, or thought of seeing, before. They had no sooner made the Discovery, but they resolv'd to fall on, as upon a lasting Spoil that was to enrich them all, and they went to work with such an avaricious Rage, that they seem'd to be as if they were plundering an Enemy's Camp, and that there was an Army at Hand to drive them from the Place; and, as it prov'd, they were in the Right to do so; for in this Gust of their greedy Appetite, they consider'd not where they were, and upon what tender ticklish Terms their Navigation stood. They had indeed drawn their two Floats to the Shore as well as they could, and with Pieces of Wood, like Piles, stuck in on every Side, brought them to ride easy, but had not taken the least Thought about change of Weather, tho' they knew they had neither Anchor nor Cable, nor so much as a Rope large enough to fasten them on the Shore.

But they were taught more Wit to their Cost in two or three Days;

for the very second Night, they felt a little unusual Rising of the Water, as they thought, tho' without any Wind; and the next Morning, they found the Water of the Lake was swell'd above two Foot perpendicular, and that their Floats, by that Means, lay a great Way farther from the Shore than they did before, the Water still increas'ing.

This made them at first, imagine there was a Tide in the Lake, and that after a little Time it would abate again; but they soon found their Mistake; for, after some Time, they perceiv'd the Water, which was perfectly fine and clear before, grew, by Degrees, of a paler Colour, thick, and whitish, 'till at last it was quite white and muddy, as is usual in Land Floods; and as it still continu'd rising, so they continu'd thrusting in their Floats farther and farther towards the Shore, 'till they had, in short, lost all the fine Golden Sands they were upon before, and found the Lake overflow'd the Land so far beyond them, that, in short, they seem'd to be in the Middle of the Lake, for they could scarce see the End of the Water, even on that very Side where, but a few Hours before, they were fast on Shore.

You

You may easily judge, that this put them into a great Consternation, and they might well conclude, that they should be all drowned and lost; for they were now, as it were, in the Middle of the Sea upon two open Floats or Rafts, fenc'd no where for the least Surge or Swell of the Water, except by a Kind of waste Board, about two Foot high, built up on the Sides, without any Caulking or Pitching, or any Thing to keep out the Water.

They had neither Mast or Sail, Anchor or Cable, Head or Stern, no Bows to fence off the Waves, or Rudder to steer any Course, or Oars to give any Motion, but like a flat-bottom'd Punt; they thrust them along with such Poles as they had, some of which were about eight or ten Foot long, and, which gave them a little Way, but very slowly.

They came on for 11 Days together very willingly, but then found the Channel of the River divided itself, and one went away to the left,

and the other to the right; they could not judge which was the best to take; but not questioning, but that they would meet again soon, they took the Southmost Channel as being most direct in the Latitude; and thus they proceeded for three or four Days more, when they were oblig'd to put into the Mouth of a little River, that fell into the other made a good Harbour for our little Fleet.

Here, I say, they were oblig'd to put in for want of Provisions, for they had eat up all their Guinacoes, and their two tame Bulls too, the last of which, they soon repented, as you will see presently.

After they had been a Hunting, and shot a couple of Deer and a Cow, with a Kind of a Hare, as big as an English Fox, they set forward again very merry, and the more, because they had another little Piece of a Gold Coast, where, for two Days, they had very good Luck again; but judge how they were surpriz'd, and in what

a Consternation they were, from one another, some more, when coming down farther the some less, that the Water fell same River, they heard a terrible Noise in the River, as of a prodigious Height; so that it was impossible any Boat could bear to launch down the Cataract and not be dashed in Pieces.

As they approach'd, it was the more frightful; so at length, lest they should be hurried into it before they were aware, they went all on Shore, doing all by Signs and dumb Postures, for it was impossible to hear any Sound.

Notwithstanding this, it was near six Miles to the Place, which, when they perceived, some of them went back to bring on the Boats, and so brought them as near the Place as they durst, and run them on Shore into a little Place of the Bank, just big enough to hold them: When they had thus secur'd the Boats, they went to view the Water fall; but, how was they astonish'd? When they found, that there were not one, but five Water-falls, at the Distance of about two Miles

They now saw there was no Remedy, but that they must lose the Benefit of their Canoes, which had been so comfortable to them, and by which, they had come above 400 Miles in a little Time, with Safety and Pleasure.

These Cataracts made the River perfectly useless to them for above 20 Miles, and it was impossible to drag their Canoes that Length over Land; so in short, they unloaded them, and for their own Satisfaction, they turn'd one, the biggest of them adrift, and let it go to the first Cataract, placing themselves so beyond, that they might see it come down, which they did, and had the Pleasure of seeing it dash'd in Pieces on the Rocks below.

Well, there was no Remedy; but they must leave their Boats behind them; and now, as I have said, they had Time to repent killing their two tame Bulls, who would have done them good Service; but it was too late to look back upon what was done and over, so many Days before they had now no Remedy, if they would go forward, but to take up

up their Baggage upon their Shoulders, and walk on Foot: The only help they had, was, that they had gotten five Guinacoes, more, which, tho' they were hungry, and would fain have eaten, yet, as they carry'd, at least 500 l. Weight of their Luggage, they chose to fast and walk, rather then feast and work; so they went on as well as they could, 'till they got past these Falls, which, tho' not above 20 Miles, cost them five Days Labour.

Then they encamp'd again to refresh themselves, and consider of what was next to be done: They were thus long upon this short Journey for many Reasons.

1. Because they were oblig'd to employ the best Part of two Days in Hunting for their Food, in which Time, five of them swimming over the River to shoot at some black Cattle, extreamly fatigu'd themselves, in pursuing them, but did, however, shoot five Cows and Bulls; but then it was at such a Distance, that it was more Pains to drag the Flesh along to the River's Side, that it was worth to have it, only, that they were, indeed hunger-starv'd, and must have it.

2. They found still some little Quantity of Gold in the Water, that is to say below the Falls, where the Water, after, by falling with such Force, it had made a Pit or Hole of a vast Depth, as is usual at a Mill-Fall, had thrown up a Shoal again, at, perhaps, a Mile Distance, there they took up some Gold, whenever the Water was low enough to come at the Shoal.

3. The Weight of their Baggage made them travel heavy, and seldom above five or six Miles a Day.

Being now come to the open River, they thought of building more Floats, but they were discourag'd from this Consideration: That they did not know, but in few Days March there might be more Water-falls, and then all their Labour would be lost; so they took up their Tent, and began to travel again.

But here, as they kept the River close on Board, as the Seamen call it, they were at a full Stop, by the coming in of another River from the S. W. which, when it join'd, the River they went along by, was a Quarter of a Mile broad, and how to get over it they knew not; they sent two Men up the additional River some Length, and brought Word that it was, indeed, narrower by much, but no where fordable, but deep and rapid.

At the same Time, they sent two more nimble Fellows down the Coast of that River, to see if there were no more Water-falls, who brought them Word, there were none for 60 Miles.

While they lay here, at the Point of the Influx, expecting the Return of their Scouts, they us'd what Diligence they could in getting Provisions; and among the rest, they kill'd three Cows and a Bull on the other Side of the biggest River; but not knowing how to bring them over, they concluded to go over, as many

as many as could swim, which was the better Halfot them, and sit down by it, and roast and broil upon the Spot, as much as they could eat, and then bring over as much as they could for their Fellows.

The got Boughs of Trees, and bound them together then wrapt the Meat in the Hides, and laid it on the Wood, and a hundred little Contrivances to get it over; so that on one Side or other, they got all the Meat eaten or brought over: What they got on their own Side the River, they made better shift with.

On the Return of their Scouts, they found there was no Remedy, but to build some new Vessels of one Kind or another, to take in their Baggage and Provision which they did, after the Manner of their first Floats; for they found no Trees big enough to make Canoes; when therefore, they had made one great Float, they resolv'd to make two small Boats like Yauls or Skifts, with which they might tow their large Float or Barge; and as this they might do with small Stuff, so they found Means to line them within and without with the Bulls Hides, and that, so dextrously join'd, and lapp'd or roll'd one over another, that no Water came through, or but very little.

With these two Boats they ferried over the small Rivers with Ease, each Boat carrying six Men, besides two to row; and when they were over the small Rivers, the two Boats serv'd to tow their great Punt or Barge close by the Shore,

The greatest Difficulty was for Tow-Lines to draw the Boats by, and that they supplied, by twisting a strong tough Kind of Flag or Rush, which they found in the River, of which, with great Application, they made a Kind of a Rope-Yarn, and then twisting it again, made it very strong.

This was the Voiture with which they carry'd themselves down to the Sea, and one of these Boats it was, that we spy'd, as above, coming to us, in the Bay.

They had yet above 450 Miles to the Sea, nor could they at any Time till or guess how far it might be. They went no more or less every Day, but 'twas but slowly, and not without great Labour, both of Rowing and Towing: Their Provisions also cost them much Labour, and it was a great Deal of Difficulty, that they were oblig'd, first to hunt and kill, and then to bring it to the Camp, which was always close to the River's Side.

After they had travell'd thus for some Time, following the Course of the River, behold they came to a Place, where, of a sudden, they could see no farther Bank of the River, but it look'd all Water like the Sea; they could not imagine what it must be, so, the next Day, they row'd towards it with one of their little Boats, when they were surpriz'd to find that it was

was the Northern, Branch of the River, which they had seen go off before they came at the Water-falls, which River being now increased with many other great Waters, was now so great, that the Mouth of it might be said to be, four or five Miles over, and rather received this River, which they were on, into this; but after this it contracted itself again, tho' still it was to be supposed near a Mile and Half over.

They were not glad of this Conjunction of the Waters at all, because the great Water being thus join'd, they found the Stream, or Current, more violent, and the Water, upon the least Stirring of the Wind, much more turbulent than it was before; and, as their great Float drew but little Water, and swam flat upon the Surface, she was ready to founder upon every Occasion: This oblig'd them, almost every Night, to seek for some little Cove or Creek to run her into, as into Harbour to preserve her; for if the Wind blew off Shore, they had enough to do to keep her from driving off, it

blew off from the River, tho' it were, otherwise, little Wind enough, yet it made a Rippling or Chopping of the Waves, that they had much Difficulty to keep it from filling her.

It may be noted here, and 'tis very observable, that in all this Journey, I do not learn, that they saw either Wolf or Fox Bear or Lion, or, indeed, any other ravenous Creature, which, indeed, were frightful to the Deer; and this, perhaps, may be the Reason, why the Number of those Creatures is so great, which, as I have said, is greater there than at other Places.

They reckon'd, that they went near 200 Miles, for they made the best of it; and at the End of this 200 Miles, it was, by their Reckoning, that our five Men, who travell'd into the Country so far, found them when they saw the Hat swimming down the Stream; which Hat, it seems, one of them let fall over-board in the Night,

They had, I say, travell'd thus far with great Difficulty, the River being so large:

But,

But, as they observ'd it grew larger and larger, the farther the went, so, they said, they did not doubt, but that, in a little more, they should come to the Sea.

They also observ'd, that now, as they found the Waters larger, and the Rivers wider, they kill'd more Fowl than formerly, and particularly more of the Duck-foot Kind, tho' they could not perceive any Sea-Fowls, or such as they had been used to. They saw a great many wild Swans, and some Geese, as also Duck, and some Mallard, and Teal; and these, I say, increased as they drew near the Sea.

They could give very little Account of the Fish which the Rivers produc'd, tho' they sometimes catch'd a few in the smaller River; but, as they had neither Fishing-Hook or Nets, which was the only Omission in my setting them out, they had no Opportunity to furnish themselves.

The Account they gave, of discovering our five Men, was thus, in short: They had been for two Days pretty successful in their Navigation, as I have describ'd it; but were oblig'd to stop, and put in at the Mouth of a little River, which made them a good Harbour; the Reason of this Stay was, they had

no Victuals, so by consent, they all went a Hunting, and at Night, having shot two Guinacoes and a Deer, they came to Supper together in their great Tent; and having fed heartily, you may suppose, on such good Provisions, they began to be merry, and the Captain and Officers, having a little Store left, tho' not much, they pull'd out their Bottles, and drank every one a Dram to their good Voyage, and to the merry Meeting of their Ships, and gave every Man a Sup.

But their Mirth was increas'd beyond expressing, when two of the Men, who were without the Tent-Door, cried out, it lighten'd; one said, he saw the Flash, he was sure, and the other said, he thought he saw it too; but, as it happen'd, their Backs were towards the East, so that they did not see the Occasion.

This Lightning was certainly the first Flash of one of our five Men's Rockets, or the Breaking of it, and the Stars that were at the End of it, up in the Air.

When the Captain heard the Men say it lighten'd. he jump'd off his Seat, and call'd aloud to them, to tell which Way; but they foolishly reply'd, to the N W. which was the Way their Faces were, when they saw it; but the Word was no sooner spoken, but the two Fellows, fell a Hollowing and Roaring, as if they were distracted, and said, they saw a Rocket rise up in the Air to the Eastward.

So nimble were the Men, at this Word, that they were all out of their Tent in a Moment, and saw the last Bounce or Flash of the Rocket with the Stars, which spreading themselves in the Air, shone with the usual bright

Light

Light, that 'tis known those Things give,

This made them all set up a Shout of Joy, as if they imagin'd their Fellows, who were yet many Miles from them, should hear them; but the Captain and Officers, who knew what they were to do on this Occasion, ran to their Baggage, and took out their own Rockets and other Materials, and prepar'd to answer the Signal.

They were on a low Ground, but at less than a Mile's Distance, the Land went ascending up to a round Crown or Knoll pretty high; away they ran thither, and set up a Frame in an Instant. But, as they were making these Preparations, behold, to confirm their News, they saw a third Rocket rise up in the Air, in the same Place as before.

It was near an Hour from the first Flash, as they call'd it, before they could get all Things ready; but then they fir'd two Rockets from the adjoining Hill, soon after one another, and after that, at about 10 Minutes Distance of Time, a third, which was just as by Agreement, and was perfectly understood, the Rockets performing very well.

Upon this, they saw another single Rocket rise up, which was to let them know, that their former was seen and understood.

This was, you will conclude, a very joyful Night, and the next Morning, they went all Hands to work at the Boats, getting out of the Creek early, and made the best of their Way; however, with all they could do, they could not go above 12 Miles that Day, for, the Current setting over to the other Shore, had left them, and in some Places, they would rather have an eddy

Stream against them; and this discourag'd them a little, but depending that they were near their Port, and that their Friends were not far off, they were very chearful. At Night they look'd out again for Rockets, which failed not to rejoyce their Hearts again; and, with this Addition, that it appear'd, their Friends were not above four or five Miles off; they answer'd the Rockets punctually, and proceeding early the next Day, they met in the Morning, joyfully enough, as has been said.

We were overjoy'd at meeting, you may be sure; but to see the pitiful Boat, or Periagua, they came on Board in, a little surpriz'd us, for, indeed, it was a Wonder they should be able to make it swim under them, especially when they came out into the open Sea.

As soon as we had the Boat on Board, we hal'd it up into the Ship for a Relick, and taking two of the Men with us, we mann'd out all our Ships Boats to go and fetch the rest, for they were as these Men told us, about 17 Miles up the River still, and could not come any farther, their Boats being not able to bring them along, and the River growing very broad and dangerous. The Eldest of my Midshipmen came in this first Boat, but the Captain and the other Men who were very unruly, and ever and anon quarrelling and wrangling about their Wealth, which, indeed, was very considerable; but they were above twice as far up the River as the Men told us, having halted after the Boat left them.

When

When our Boats came to them, and took them in, I order'd they should be on shore, 'till I had settled Matters a little with them, having had an Account how Mutinous and Fractious they had been; and I made them all stay there 'till I had fully adjusted e'ry thing with about their Treasure, which, indeed, was so much, that they scarce knew how to govern themselves under the Thoughts of it.

Here I propos'd Conditions to them at first, that all the Gold should be shared before they went on Board, and that it should be put on Board the Ship, as Goods for every Man's single Account; that I would give them Bills of Lading for it, and I offer'd to swear to them, to deliver it into every Man's Possession, separately, at first Port, they should every Man have the one Hundred Pounds I had promis'd them, as above for the undertaking this Journey, delivered to them in Money, that is to say, in Gold-Dust; and that the alone, should have full Liberty to go on Shore with it, and go whither they would, no Man whatever, but themselves, being allow'd to set Foot on Shore in the same Place, *Distress excepted*. This they insist'd on, because they had done some Things, which, if I would I might have pursued some of them, for perhaps, to the Gallows; but I promis'd to forgive them, and to enquire no more after it.

We had nothing now to do, but to make the best of our Way for England, and setting Sail from the Mouth of the River Camerones, so the Spaniards

call it, the 18th of January in which, we had a more difficult and unpleasant Voyage, than in any other Part of our Way, chiefly because, being a rich Ship, and not knowing how Affairs stood in Europe, I kept to the Northward; as far as the Banks of Newfoundland, steering thence to the Coast of Galicia where we touch'd, as above; after which, we went through the Channel, and arriv'd safe in Dunkirk-Road, the 12th of April; and from thence gave private Notice of our good Fortune to our Merchants and Owners; two of whom came over to us, and received at our Hand such a Treasure, as gave them Reason to be very well satisfy'd with their Adventure: But, to my great Grief, my particular Friend, the Merchant, who put us upon all the Curiosity, and all the Discovery you have heard of, was dead before our Return; which, if it had not happen'd, this new Scheme of a Trade round the World, had, perhaps, never been made Publick, 'till it had been put in Practice, by a set of Merchants design'd to be concerned in it, from the New Austrian Netherlands.

7
2
0
e
r
t
a
n
l
n
s
t
l